

LET'S TALK ARABIC



THE LEADING BOOK FOR BEGINNERS OF ARABIC
SECOND EDITION

ADAM YACOUB

Let's Talk Arabic

Dr. Adam Yacoub

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com/>

This title is also available at major online book retailers.

© Copyright 2011 Dr. Adam Yacoub

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the written prior permission of the author.

eISBN-13: 978-81-8260-085-0

DEDICATION

We wish to thank all of those who have kindly helped with introducing this book, every effort or advice had been made to trace all the covered topics but if any had been inadvertently overlooked the author will be pleased to make the necessary arrangement at first opportunity.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are lucky enough to have benefited from the experience of some of the experts in teaching Arabic across this edition. We would like to thank everyone for his or her useful comments on this work.

CONTENTS

[Cover Image](#)

[Title Page](#)

[Dedication](#)

[Acknowledgments](#)

[Part 1](#)

Preface: [Congratulations](#)

Unit One: [Saying “Hello”](#)

Unit Two: [What's your name?](#)

Unit Three: [What is this?](#)

Unit Four: [The family](#)

Unit Five: [What do you do?](#)

Unit Six: [In the Restaurant](#)

Unit Seven: [Asking for Directions](#)

Unit Eight: [At the Supermarket?](#)

Unit Nine: [What happened yesterday](#)

Unit Ten: [Going for Shopping](#)

Unit Eleven: [Looking for an Apartment](#)

Unit Twelve: [Weekend Plan](#)

Unit Thirteen: [Making an Appointment](#)

Unit Fourteen: [At the Clinic](#)

Unit Fifteen: [At the Bank](#)

Unit Fifteen: [Culture Notes](#)

[Alchemy](#)

[Some of his discoveries in chemistry](#)

[Mariam al-Astrulabi](#)

[Arabic - English glossary](#)

[English - Arabic glossary](#)

[About the Author](#)

[Copyright & Permissions](#)

Part 1

Preface

Congratulations

mabrook

Well done for making the fantastic decision to learn the wonderful language of Arabic. For whatever reason it may be, a new challenge, relocation to an Arabic speaking country or for business, you can rest assured that you have made another great decision in choosing one of the most successful and smoothest Arabic courses. This book will lead you to push yourself and take a step above the rest in a fun and interactive way.

Arabic is considered to be one of the most alive, important and beautiful languages in the world. This book uses an extremely stimulating, logical and easy way to help you learn from the very beginning. In any language, speaking appears to be the most fundamental aspect for a lot of people. From the start of the book, you will be introduced to the basics of speaking and pronunciation, using a simple format that allows everyone to speak Arabic in a natural way. The book will then continue to develop your new skills by enabling you to understand and heighten your ability to read, listen to and write this amazing language.

Arabic is a Semitic language and is the formal and official language of 22 Arab countries. It is also the spoken language of almost 420 million people living in Arabic and non Arabic countries.

This book will teach you the basics of Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), which is the modernization of the Classical Arabic structures, as well as additions from the main dialects spoken all over the Arab world.

Variations of the Language

Like any other language, spoken Arabic has some dialects with variations and differences. The differences between these dialects are incomprehensible from one to the other, and can be referred to as five main dialects divided according to their regions.

Maghreb

The Maghreb dialect is spoken in the region of the Maghreb countries, Libya, Tunisia, Algeria, Mauritania, and Morocco.

Egyptian:

The Egyptian dialect is used in Egypt, Sudan, Yemen, and some western parts of Saudi Arabia. It is the most widely understood colloquial dialect across the Arab world, because almost 93% of Arabic Movies, TV, and Media use the Egyptian dialect.

Levantine

The Levantine dialect comes from and is used in Lebanon, Palestine, Jordan and Syria.

The Gulf

The Gulf dialect is spoken in the Arabic Gulf Countries, which are made up by Iraq, Kuwait, most of Saudi Arabia, Qatar, Bahrain, the United Arab Emirates, and Oman.

Modern Standard Arabic

MSA (Modern Standard Arabic) has become the most popular dialect and is now spoken and used by all the Arab countries.

Pronunciation	The letter
As in (a); apple, absolutely, April, and like (a): man, hat, mat.	ا Alif ('a)
As in (b); bat, band, balcony.	ب Ba' (b)
As in (t); tank, tab.	ت Ta' (t)
Like (th); thank, three, throat, thin, think, thief.	ث Tha' (th)
As in (j): Jam, jack, jacket.	ج Jeem (j)
A rough, aspirated 'H' (as when you swallowed something hot), or when you breath after running or doing sports	ح (H) Not in English
As in (loch) in Scottish English accent,	خ Kha' (kh)

The dark countries on the map show the Arab League.

Written Arabic

The core of Arabic writing that is used today comes from the classical Arabic which is principally defined as the Arabic used in the Qur'an and in the earliest form of literature from the Arabian Peninsula.

Two Important Facts

The First is that, any language has a vast wealth of vocabulary, but do we need to learn that vast amount to be able to communicate in a language?

Of course not! **Just, 20%** of the words in a language make up to **80%** of the conversations we face in our daily life. You may not be speaking like a native immediately, but you'll have a solid base and the ability to keep improving and developing yourself. This method is suitable for everyone from frequent travelers to first timers, as well as language students and enthusiasts.

So, this book focuses on the vital 20% that will help you speak Arabic interactively and dynamically.

The second point and this is a really exciting fact. The Arabic language uses word roots, for example, we can take one root like **(KTB)** from the word **(KaTaBa)** which means "he wrote" and from there conjugate all **Arabic verbs tense**. Nouns can also be made from the same root because they have a relation with it.

KaaTeB= writer, **KeTaab**= book, **maKTaB**= office,

maKTaBa= library, **ma KToob** = letter & written, and more.

Arabic grammar is fairly simple compared to Western languages, but the language itself has richness in its vocabulary that exceeds most languages in the Western world.

Below is the Arabic alphabet and key to show you how to pronounce them. Try to read paying attention to the pronunciation.

As in (d): dad, door, dean.	د Dal (d)
Like (th): they, father, mother, brother, together, feather.	ذ Thal (Th)
As in (r): run, role, real.	ر Ra' (r)
As in (z): zoo, zone.	ز Zai (z)
As in (s): sat, sink, soon.	س Seen (s)
Like (sh): shark, she, shy, Sharon.	ش Sheen (sh)
Heavy consonant of (s) like: son, summer.	ص Saad (S)
Heavy consonant of (d) like in: done, duck	ض Daad (D)
Heavy consonant of (T) like: Tariq, tall, tower	ط Taa' (T)

Heavy consonant of the letter (z), sounds similar to although	ظ (TH) Not in English
Not in English, it's roughly like (ai) in main but stronger	ع (A) Ain
Like the French (r)	ع (gh)ghain
As in (f): farm, film, foggy, family	ف (f) Fa'
Like (q): Qatar, Qur'an, quality.	ق (q) qaf
Like (k): kind, king, Kuwait.	ك (k) Kaf
As in (l): lamp, lane, language.	ل (l) lam
As in (m): man, milk, moon.	م (m) Meem
As in (n): now, new, nominal.	ن (n) Noon
Like (h): hand, hair, here, honey, hear.	ه (h) Ha'
Like (o): one, and (o) in: moon, more.	و (w) waw
Like (y): you, yesterday, and like (i) in: him, drink, Friday.	ي (y) Yaa'



UNIT ONE

Saying "Hello"

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ!

UNIT ONE

Saying "Hello"

Contents

- [Dialogue: *Saying "Hello"*](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Other useful phrases](#)
- [Culture Notes: *Greetings in Arabic*](#)
- [Vocabulary practice](#)
- [Grammar usage:](#)
[*verb "to be" in Arabic*](#)
[*Definite and indefinite articles*](#)
[*Gender*](#)
- [Grammar Exercises](#)

Hello!

as-salaamu Aalaykum!

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: Welcome Mahmoud!	A: <i>as-salaamu Aalaykum, marHaban mahmoud!</i>	أَدَم: السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ؛ مَرَحِبًا مَحْمُودًا!
Mahmoud: Hello Adam!	M: <i>wa Aalaykum as-salaam, 'ahlan wa sahlān ya 'adam!</i>	مَحْمُود: وَعَلَيْكُمْ السَّلَام: أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا يَا أَدَم!
Adam: How are you?	A: <i>Kayf al-Haal?</i>	أَدَم: كَيْفَ الْحَالِ؟
Mahmoud: I'm doing well. And you. How are you?	M: <i>al-Hamdulillah. Wa 'anta, kayf al-Haal?</i>	مَحْمُود: الْحَمْدُ لِيهِ. وَأَنْتَ: كَيْفَ الْحَالِ؟
Adam: Fine. I'm doing well. Thanks.	A: <i>al-Hamdu lillah. 'anaa bekhayr. shukran</i>	أَدَم: الْحَمْدُ لِيهِ. أَنَا يَخَيْرُ. شُكْرًا.

In this lesson you will learn some basic greetings and how to ask "How are you?"

A dialogue:

Learn as Adam meets an old high school friend, Mahmoud. They haven't seen each other for long time.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
peace	<i>as-salaam</i>	السَّلَام
Peace be upon you!	<i>as-salaamu Aalaykum</i>	السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ!
and	<i>wa</i>	وَ
and upon you peace	<i>wa Aalaykum as-salaam</i>	وَعَلَيْكُمْ السَّلَام
how?	<i>kayf</i>	كَيْفَ؟
how are you?	<i>Kayfa alHaal</i>	كَيْفَ الْحَالِ؟
condition	<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال
I / I'm	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
you (for male)	<i>'anta</i>	أَنْتَ
you (for female)	<i>'anti</i>	أَنْتِ
praise	<i>al-Hamd</i>	الْحَمْدُ
Thanks to God	<i>al-Hmdu lillah</i>	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ
good	<i>khayr</i>	خَيْرٌ
I'm fine	<i>'anaa bekhayr</i>	أَنَا بِخَيْرٍ
welcome	<i>marHaban</i>	مَرْحَبًا
hi	<i>'ahlan</i>	أَهْلًا
hello	<i>'ahlan wa-sahlan</i>	أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا
O; Adam	<i>yaa adam</i>	يَا آدَمَ

Vocabulary

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Morning	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاحٌ
Good morning	<i>SabaaH el-khayr</i>	صَبَاحُ الْخَيْرِ
Evening	<i>masaa'</i>	مَسَاءٌ
Good evening	<i>masaa' el-khayr</i>	مَسَاءُ الْخَيْرِ
Response for good morning	<i>SabaaH en-nuur</i>	صَبَاحُ النُّورِ
Response for good evening	<i>masaa' en-nuur</i>	مَسَاءُ النُّورِ
Light	<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّورُ
Daytime	<i>an-nahaar</i>	النَّهَارُ
Night	<i>al-layl</i>	اللَّيْلُ
One night	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةٌ

Other useful phrases:

Day	<i>yawm</i>	يَوْمَ
Days	<i>'ay-yaam</i>	أَيَّامَ
Today	<i>al-yawm</i>	الْيَوْمَ
The (Definite article attached to the words).	<i>al</i>	ال
Go with peace	<i>maAa as-salaama</i>	مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ
Good night	<i>layla saAiida</i>	لَيْلَةَ سَعِيدَةٍ
happy	<i>saAiid/saAiida</i>	سَعِيدٌ / سَعِيدَةٌ
Wake up in good condition	<i>tuSbeH Aalaa khayr</i>	تُصْبِحُ عَلَى خَيْرٍ

.....

Culture Notes:

The most common greeting in Arabic is the phrase "*as-salaamu Aalaykum*" which means literally "may peace be upon you". And the most common reply is "*wa Aalaykum as-salaam*", which means literally "and upon you peace".

But as you see in the above phrases, to learn a language, you have to learn its culture, because literal or direct translation doesn't make sense when you speak that language.

The same thing in "*SabaaH el-khayr*" = good morning, and the response of it, which is "*Sabaah en-nuur*" while "*nuur*" means literally "light", but this is the way how Arabs greet each others, simply means: if you greet me using good words, so I have to greet you using better words!.

Also there is no specific word for greeting in the afternoon. You can use simply either "*as-salaamu Aalaykum*" at anytime, or "*masaa' el-khayr*" for the afternoon as well.

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 1: Answer the following questions:

1- You walk into a classroom in an Arab country, what is the first thing that you can say?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- What would be expected in response?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- How do you say "Good morning"? What is the response for it?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- How do you say "Good Evening"? What is the response for it?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- How do you say "Good afternoon"? What is the response for it?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- How do you say "Good night"? What would be expected in response?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- How would you say "How are you doing"? How would you answer?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَحْيِر	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Match each word in (A) with an appropriate word in (B) to make a phrase or a sentence. Go from right to left:

How " <u>are</u> " you?	<i>Kayf al-Haal?</i>	كَيْفَ الْحَالِ؟
" <u>I</u> m" doing well. And you. How " <u>are</u> " you?	<i>al-Hamdu lillah. Wa 'anta, kayf al-Haal?</i>	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ. وَأَنْتَ: كَيْفَ الْحَالِ؟
Fine. " <u>I</u> m" doing well. Thanks.	<i>al-Hamdu lillah. 'anaa bekhayr. shukran</i>	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ. أَنَا يَحْيِر. شُكْرًا.

Exercise 3: Write down the Arabic meaning of the below words:

1- Hello, good night, and, How, today, the daytime.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- Welcome, Morning, Good.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- How are you today?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- I'm fine. Thanks.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- Good evening!

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- Peace be upon you.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- Good afternoon.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَحْيَى	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Grammar usage**1- Verb "to be" in Arabic:**

In Arabic, there is no direct translation of "**to be**" in the present tense. That means that "**am & is & are**" will not show in an Arabic sentence. For example:

ت، ث، د، ذ، ر، ز، س، ش، ص، ض، ط، ظ، ل، ن

2-Definite and Indefinite articles:

There are no indefinite articles (a/an) in Arabic. For example; "*SabaaH*" means (morning) and (a morning), and "*masaa*" means (evening) and (an evening).

Arabic has a definite article as "the" in English. It is "*al*", in Arabic, which added to the beginning of a word by attaching the prefix "*al-*". For example; "*al-masaa*" means (the evening), "*al-Haal*" means (the condition).

There is one other important rule to keep in mind when it comes to the definite article "*al*".

Remember the phrases "*as-salaam*" and "*an-nuur*". As the "*as*" in "*as-salaam*" and the "*an*" in "*an-nuur*" means "the" as well, But as you can see how they are pronounced differently from "*al*".

That's because there are few letters in Arabic when they come after the definite article "*al*" so they can cancel the pronunciation of the "*l*" sound in "*al*" and that time you will find only the "*a*" followed by those mentioned letters doubled, as in "*as-salaam*" with double "*s*" and "*an-nuur*" with double

"n".

Those letters called "sun letters" because the word "shams" in Arabic which means "sun" begins with one of them.

How to know those letters? Simply they are the ones which we use the tip of the tongue to pronounce them: "t, th, d, dh, r, z, sh, s, l, n". Fourteen of the Arabic alphabets:

خَيْر	لَيْلَة	مَسَاء	صَبَاح	يَوْم
khayr	layla	masaa'	SabaaH	yawm
مَرَاة	بِنْت	رَجُل	نَهَار	حَال
mar'aa	bent	rajul	nahaar	Haal

The other 14 letters which don't force "l" in "al" to be silent are called "moon letters" because the word "moon = qamar" in Arabic begins with one of them. Here is the example for both cases:

"SabaaH" = a morning, "aS-SabaaH" = the morning. "masaa" = an evening, "al-masaa" = the evening. "shams" = sun, "ash-shams" = the sun. "qamar" = moon, "al-qamar" = the moon.

(You will find more explaining the reading course in this book).

3-Gender:

Arabic is a language that has gender, like Spanish, French, and Italian. That means every noun is either masculine or feminine.

Nouns in Arabic if they have the sound (a) at the end, or what's called in Arabic (taa' marbuuta), so they are generally or 90% feminine, and masculine if they end in anything else. Examples:

"rajul": man (masculine), "mar'a": woman (feminine), "ketaab": book (masculine), "Taawila": table (feminine), "qalam": pen (masculine), "say-yaara": car (feminine)

Keep in mind that not all feminine nouns end in with this sign.

Examples:

"bent": girl (f), "ukht": sister (f), also some objects like: "shams": sun (f), "'arD": earth (f). But this type of feminine gender is very rare in Arabic.

Grammar Exercises

It is always better to do an exercise for anything new you learn. So if you feel that you are not yet ready to do it, so it is better to get back and read the grammar notes again.

Exercise 4: Change these indefinite nouns into definite ones, using the appropriate form of the article (*al*). Then translate them into English: Remember the rule of the sun letters:

سَيَّارَةٌ	لَيْلَةٌ	قَلَمٌ	كِتَابٌ	يَوْمٌ
<i>say-yara</i>	<i>layla</i>	<i>qalam</i>	<i>kitaab</i>	<i>yawm</i>
مَرَأَةٌ	بِنْتُ	رَجُلٌ	نَهَارٌ	أَخْتُ
<i>mar'a</i>	<i>bint</i>	<i>rajul</i>	<i>nahaar</i>	<i>ukht</i>

Exercise 5: Circle the feminine nouns in the below words:



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files with more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT TWO

What's your name?

ما اسمك؟

UNIT TWO

What's your name?

Contents

- [Dialogue two: "what's your name?"](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Useful vocabulary](#)
- [Things around us](#)
- [Grammar notes](#)
- [*The possessive adjective*](#)
- [*Subject pronouns*](#)
- [*Question words*](#)
- [Exercises](#)

What is your name?

Maa esmuk?

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: Welcome!	A: <i>marHaban.</i>	أَدَم: مَرْحَبًا.
John: Hello!	B: <i>'ahlan wa sahlān.</i>	جُون: أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا.
Adam: My name is Adam, What is your name, please?	A: <i>esmii 'adam. maa esmuka men faDlek?</i>	أَدَم: إِسْمِي أَدَم، مَا إِسْمُكَ مِنْ فَذْلِكَ؟
John: My name is John!	B: <i>esmii john.</i>	جُون: إِسْمِي جُون.
Adam: Are you from France?	A: <i>'anta men faransaa?.</i>	أَدَم: أَنْتَ مِنْ فَرَنْسَا؟
John: No, I'm American from Boston, Where are you from?	B: <i>laa. 'anaa 'amriiky men madiinat boston, wa men ayn 'anta?</i>	جُون: لَا، أَنَا أَمْرِيكِي مِنْ مَدِينَةِ بوسطن، وَمِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟
Adam: I'm Egyptian from Cairo.	A: <i>'anaa meSryy men madiinat el-qaahera.</i>	أَدَم: أَنَا مِصْرِي مِنْ مَدِينَةِ الْقَاهِرَةِ.
John: Nice to meet you, Adam.	B: <i>furSa saAiida yaa 'adam!</i>	جُون: فُرْصَةَ سَعِيدَةَ يَا أَدَم.
Adam: Nice to meet you.	A: <i>tashar-rafna</i>	أَدَم: تَشَرَّفْنَا.

A dialogue:

Learn as Adam meets John for first time at the university. They get to know each other.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
name	<i>esm</i>	إِسْم
my name	<i>esmii</i>	إِسْمِي
what's your name?(for male)	<i>esmuka</i>	مَا إِسْمُكَ؟
your name(for female)	<i>esmuke</i>	إِسْمُكِ
please	<i>men faDlek</i>	مِنْ فَضْلِكَ
America	<i>'amriicaa</i>	أَمْرِيكا
from	<i>men</i>	مِنْ
where	<i>'ayn</i>	أَيْنَ
American	<i>'amriikyjy</i>	أَمْرِيكِيّ
what	<i>maa</i>	مَا
Egyptian	<i>meSryy</i>	مِصْرِيّ
Nice to meet you.	<i>furSa saAiida,</i>	فُرْصَة سَعِيدَة،
Honored to meet you.	<i>tashar-rafna</i>	تَشْرَفْنَا








Vocabulary:

English	Transliteration	Arabic
father	<i>'abb</i>	أَبّ
mother	<i>umm</i>	أُمّ
sister	<i>ukht</i>	أُخْت
brother	<i>'akh</i>	أَخ
son	<i>ebn</i>	إِبْن
daughter	<i>ebna</i>	إِبْنَة
grandfather	<i>jadd</i>	جَدّ
grandmother	<i>jad-da</i>	جَدَّة

Useful Vocabulary:

English	Transliteration	Arabic
chair	<i>kursii</i>	كُرْسِي
book	<i>ketaab</i>	كِتَاب
office/ desk	<i>maktab</i>	مَكْتَب
table	<i>Taarwela</i>	طَاوِلَة
computer	<i>Haasuub</i>	حَاسِب
seat	<i>meqAad</i>	مِقْعَد
room	<i>ghurfa</i>	عُرْفَة
home	<i>bayt</i>	بَيْت
classroom	<i>faSl</i>	فَصْل
school	<i>madrassa</i>	مَدْرَسَة
university	<i>jameAa</i>	جَامِعَة
college/ faculty	<i>kul-ley-ya</i>	كُلِيَة
city/ town	<i>madiina</i>	مَدِينَة
message	<i>resaala</i>	رِسَالَة

Things around us:

English	Female adjective (nationality)	Male adjective (nationality)	Country	
Egyptian	مِصْرِيَّة <i>meSrey-ya</i>	مِصْرِيّ <i>meSryyy</i>	مِصْر <i>meSr</i>	
Syrian	سُورِيَّة <i>Suury-ya</i>	سُورِيّ <i>suuryyy</i>	سُورِيَّة <i>suurya</i>	
Lebanese	لُبْنَانِيَّة <i>lubnaaney-ya</i>	لُبْنَانِيّ <i>lubnaanyyy</i>	لُبْنَان <i>lubnaan</i>	
Canadian	كَنْدِيَّة <i>kanadey-ya</i>	كَنْدِيّ <i>kanadyyy</i>	كَنْدَا <i>kanada</i>	
Iraqi	عِرَاقِيَّة <i>Aeraaqey-ya</i>	عِرَاقِيّ <i>Aeraaqyy</i>	العِرَاق <i>al-Aeraaq</i>	
French	فَرَنْسِيَّة <i>faransey-ya</i>	فَرَنْسِيّ <i>faransyy</i>	فَرَنْسَا <i>faransaa</i>	
German	أَلْمَانِيَّة <i>'almaaney-ya</i>	أَلْمَانِيّ <i>'almaanyyy</i>	أَلْمَانِيَا <i>'almaanya</i>	

Grammar notes:

By now you are able to recognize a lot of from what you have seen at the previous lesson. Remember the very common greeting phrase in Arabic "marHaban" and "'ahlan wa sahlan" these are the friendly greetings that Majed and Adam used.

To ask someone: "What's your name?" simply say: "maa esmuka?" to a man, or "maa esmuke?" to a woman. Word by word: "maa" means: (what) and (your) is a possessive pronoun, which consists of (you = 'anta or 'ante) with adding of "ka or ke" to give the meaning of "esmuka" for a man or "esmuke" for a woman. Remember that Arabic doesn't express (is, are, or am) and there are two forms of you: "anta" to a man and "anti" to a woman.

The response for this question is: "my (possessive pronoun) + name" which equal in Arabic "esm + ii".

How to ask: "Where are you from?" simply say "men 'ayn 'anta" to a man as we mentioned above or "ante" to a woman.

There are other different forms for speaking to two people or to three or more, but do not worry about that for now!

At the end of the dialogue you have learned how to speak friendly to any one and how you can use a useful phrase like "nice to meet you", which means "*furSa saAiida*" or "*tashar-rafna*".

1- The possessive adjective

Where are you from?

The title refers to a type of adjective formed by adding a suffix (*yy*) for masculine, or (*y-ya*) for feminine nouns.

- To form these types of adjective from a place or noun, follow these steps;

1- Remove the article if the noun has (*al*) as in the example of (Iraq) above.

2- Remove any (*alif, taa' marbuuta*) from the end of the nouns.

3- Add the suffix (*yy*) to make the adjective for male, or (*y-ya*) to make it for female. See the next table;

I	'anaa	أنا
We	naHnu	نَحْنُ
You (for male)	'anta	أَنْتَ
You (for female)	'anti	أَنْتِ
You (plural)	'antum	أَنْتُمْ
He / It (for masculine)	huwa	هُوَ
She /It (for feminine)	heya	هِيَ
They (plural)	hum	هُمْ

2-Subject pronouns:

Arabic is like English. It has two sets of personal pronouns: subject and possessive pronouns. There is some overlap among these sets. However, Arabic has more pronouns than English (Formal Arabic has separate categories for masculine and feminine and dual pronouns for sets of two, these are not used in most varieties of spoken Arabic). Here you will learn the following most commonly used subject pronouns in spoken Arabic:

English	Transliteration	Arabic
What? (used before nouns)	<i>maa</i>	مَا؟
What? (used before verbs)	<i>maaThaa</i>	مَاذَا؟
Why?	<i>lema / lemaaThaa</i>	لِمَ / لِمَاذَا؟
Where?	<i>'ayn</i>	أَيْنَ؟
Who?	<i>man</i>	مَنْ؟
When?	<i>mataa</i>	مَتَى؟
How?	<i>kayf</i>	كَيْفَ؟
For (Yes/No) question	<i>hal</i>	هَلْ؟
From where?	<i>men 'ayn</i>	مِنْ أَيْنَ؟
With whom?	<i>maAa man</i>	مَعَ مَنْ؟
Which?	<i>'ayy</i>	أَيُّ؟

3- Question words.

To ask a question in Arabic, use one of the below words at the beginning of a sentence:

English	Transliteration	Arabic
1- What's your name?	<i>maa esmuk?</i>	1- ما إِسْمُكَ؟
2- What do you do?	<i>matha taAmal?</i>	2- ماذا تَعْمَلُ؟
3- Why are you in Egypt?	<i>lema 'anta fii meSr?</i>	3- لِمَ أَنْتَ فِي مِصْرَ؟
4- Where's the University?	<i>'ayn al-jaameAa ?</i>	4- أَيْنَ الْجَامِعَةِ؟
5- Who is Adam?	<i>man 'adam?</i>	5- مَنْ آدَمُ؟
6- When is the lesson?	<i>mataa ad-dars?</i>	6- مَتَى الدَّرْسُ؟.
7- How are things?	<i>kayf al-Haal?</i>	7- كَيْفَ الْحَالِ؟.
8- Are you from France?	<i>hal 'anta men</i>	8- هل أَنْتَ مِنْ فَرَنْسَا؟
9- Where are you from?	<i>Faransaa?</i>	9- من أين أنت؟
10- From which country you are?	<i>men 'ayn 'anta?</i>	10- من أي بِلَدٍ أَنْتَ ؟
	<i>men 'ayy balad 'anta?</i>	

Examples:

B		A	
<i>esmii Sarah</i>	إِسْمِي سَارَة	<i>maa esmuka?</i>	مَا إِسْمُكَ؟
<i>'anaa meSryy</i>	أَنَا مِصْرِي	<i>men 'ayn 'anti?</i>	مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتِ؟
<i>'anaa amriiky-ya</i>	أَنَا أَمْرِيكِيَّة	<i>men 'ayn 'anta?</i>	مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟
<i>esmii 'adam</i>	إِسْمِي آدَم	<i>maa esmuke?</i>	مَا إِسْمُكَ؟

Exercises

Exercise1: Answer the following questions:

1-What would you say at the end when you meet someone for the first time and you get to greet him?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2-What would be expected in response?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3-How do you say "what is your name?" and what is the response for it?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4-How do you say "Where are you from?" and what is the response for it?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Match each question in (A) with an appropriate answer in (B):

1. huwa..... (meSr)هو.1 (مصر).
2. heya..... (amriikaa)هي.2 (أمريكا)
3. hal 'anta? (al-hind= India) هل أنت ؟ (الهند)
4. hal 'anti.....? (fransaa) هل أنت ؟ (فرنسا)
5. 'anaa(al-Aeraaq)أنا.....(العراق)

Exercise 3: Identify the nationality of the following personal pronouns. The country name is given in the brackets:



Exercise 4: Translate into Arabic:

1- Where are you from?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّر	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2-What is your name?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّر	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- Emirati, Egyptian, American. (Males and females)

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- Nice to meet you!

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- University, college, name, from.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT THREE

What is this?

ما هَذَا / هَذِهِ؟

UNIT THREE

What is this?

Contents

- [Demonstratives](#)
- [Useful adjectives](#)
- [Grammar notice](#)

[Simple sentences](#)

[Noun-Adjective phrases](#)

- [Exercises](#)

What's this?

maa haThaa / haThehe?



هَذَا قَلَم
haTha qalam
This is a pen



هَذَا كِتَاب
haTha Ketaab
This is a book



هَذَا بَيْت
haTha bayt
This is a house



هَذَا هَاتِف
haTha haatuf
This is a telephone



هَذَا مَكْتَب
haTha maktab
This is an office / desk



هَذَا كُرْسِي
haTha kursy
This is a chair

Demonstratives

The demonstratives "*haTha / haThehe*" are the two used words to point in the phrases like "this is a/an..." and "this..."

Look at the below examples and learn how to say "this is a" & "this is the":

1- **This is a / an...** (Pointing to a masculine)



هَذِهِ سَيَّارَةٌ
haThehe say-yaara
 This is a Car



هَذِهِ غُرْفَةٌ
haThehe ghurfa
 This is a room



هَذِهِ بِنْتُ
haThehe bent
 This is a girl



هَذِهِ صُورَةٌ
haThehe Suura
 This is a picture



هَذِهِ سَاعَةٌ
haThehe saaAa
 This is a watch



هَذِهِ مَكْتَبَةٌ
haThehe maktaba
 This is a library

2- **This is a / an...**(Pointing to a feminine)

هَذَا الْقَلَمُ
haTha al-qalam
 This pen

هَذَا الْكِتَابُ
haTha al-ketaab
 This book

هَذَا الْبَيْتُ
haTha al-bayt
 This house

هَذَا الْهَاتِفُ
haTha al-haatef
 This telephone

هَذَا الْمَكْتَبُ
haTha al-maktab
 This office / desk

هَذَا الْكُرْسِيُّ
haTha al-kursy
 This chair

1- **This....** (Pointing to a masculine)

هَذِهِ السَّيَّارَةُ
haThehe es-say-yaara
 This Car

هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةُ
haThehe el-ghurfa
 This room

هَذِهِ الْبِنْتُ
haThehe el-bent
 This girl

هَذِهِ الصُّورَةُ
haThehe eS-Suura
 This picture

هَذِهِ السَّاعَةُ
haThehe es-saaAa
 This watch

هَذِهِ الطَّاوِلَةُ
haThehe eT-Taawela
 This table

2- **This....** (Pointing to a feminine)

ة



Useful adjectives:

(m) is abbreviation for (masculine) & (f) is abbreviation for (feminine). You can see that the basic

	English	Transliteration	Arabic
	b) big / (old for human)	<i>kabiir (m)</i> <i>kabiira (f)</i>	كَبِير كَبِيرَة
	a) small	<i>Saghiir (m)</i> <i>Saghiira(f)</i>	صَغِير صَغِيرَة
	a) far	<i>baAiid (m)</i> <i>baAiida (f)</i>	بَعِيد بَعِيدَة
	b) near / close to	<i>qariib (m)</i> <i>qariiba (f)</i>	قَرِيب قَرِيبَة
	b)old (not for human)	<i>qadiim (m)</i> <i>qadiima (f)</i>	قَدِيم قَدِيمَة
	a) new	<i>jadiid (m)</i> <i>jadiida (f)</i>	جَدِيد جَدِيدَة

rule in the Arabic language is to put "*taa marbuuta*" to the masculine noun or adjective to make it feminine.

	a)good	<i>jay-yed (m)</i> <i>jay-yeda (f)</i>	جَيِّد جَيِّدَة
	b)bad	<i>say-ye' (m)</i> <i>say-ye'a (f)</i>	سَيِّئ سَيِّئَة
	a) wide	<i>waaseA (m)</i> <i>waaseAa (f)</i>	وَاسِع وَاسِعَة
	b) narrow	<i>Day-yeq (m)</i> <i>Day-yeqa (f)</i>	ضَيِّق ضَيِّقَة
	beautiful	<i>jamiil (m)</i> <i>jamiila (f)</i>	جَمِيل جَمِيلَة
	nice	<i>laTiif (m)</i> <i>laTiifa (f)</i>	لَطِيف لَطِيفَة

	b) long / tall	Tawiil (m) Tawiila (f)	طويل طويلة
	a) short	qaSiir (m) qaSiira (f)	قصير قصيرة
	Kind	Tay-yeb (m) tay-yeba (f)	طيب طيبة

أنا مهندس
'anaa muhandes
I (am) an engineer

أنا من سوريا
'anaa men suurya
I (am) from Syria

أنا أحمد
'anaa 'aHmad.
I (am) Ahmad.

هو محاسب
huwa muHaaseb
He (is) an accountant

هو من قطر
huwa men qatar
He (is) from Qatar

هو حمدان
huwa Hamdaan
He (is) Hamdan

هم من جدة
hum men jad-da
They (are) from Jeddah

أنتم من دبي
'antum men dubai
You (are) all from
Dubai

نحن من الإمارات
naHnu men al-emaaraat
We (are) from Emirates

المدينة كبيرة
al-madiina kabiira
The city (is) big

الجو لطيف
al-jaww laTiif
The weather (is) nice

البيت جميل
al-bayt jamiil
The house (is) beautiful

Grammar notice

1- Simple Sentences

Many Arabic sentences do not need the verb "to be" (am, is, are) in the present tense, which means that you can have a (nominal sentence) without verbs at all. Look at the below phrases;

بيت كبير
bayt kabiir
a big house

البيت الكبير
al-bayt al-kabiir
the big house

2- Noun-Adjective phrases:

It is simple to form an adjective phrases in Arabic, because (The adjective follows the noun), as in the below example.

الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ

al-bayt kabiir

The house (is) big

As you see in the two examples, if the noun has a definite article (*al*) also the adjective must be with (*al*), and vice versa.

Remember that, if the first word or the noun is definite or with (*al*) and the second word is not definite, so; it will be considered a full nominal sentence as in the grammar notice number 1. Example;

Transliteration	Arabic
1- <i>al-bayt Saghiir.</i>	1- الْبَيْتُ صَغِيرٌ.
.....
2- <i>haThehe el-madiina qadiima.</i>	2- هَذِهِ الْمَدِينَةُ قَدِيمَةٌ.
.....
3- <i>haTha maktab waaseA.</i>	3- هَذَا مَكْتَبٌ وَاسِعٌ.
.....
4- <i>haThehe madrasa.</i>	4- هَذِهِ مَدْرَسَةٌ.
.....
5- <i>'adam men madiinat el-qaahera.</i>	5- آدَمٌ مِنْ مَدِينَةِ الْقَاهِرَةِ.
.....
6- <i>saara Aeraaqy-ya, men al-baSra.</i>	6- سَارَةُ عِرَاقِيَّةٌ؛ مِنَ الْبَصْرَةِ.
.....
7- <i>hum men madiinat 'abu THabii.</i>	7- هُمْ مِنْ مَدِينَةِ أَبِي طَالِبٍ.
.....
8- <i>haTha ketaab jay-yed.</i>	8- هَذَا كِتَابٌ جَيِّدٌ.
.....

Exercise 1: Translate into Arabic:

1- The house is wide.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- The city is beautiful.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- This is an office.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- This chair is small.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- This table is long.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- This is an old school.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- Hamdan is Qatari and Ahmad is Emarati.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

8- They are from Kuwait.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

9- This is a new book.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	' <i>anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

10- This is a tall girl, and this is a small boy.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	' <i>anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Translate into English:

Transliteration	Arabic
1- jaameAa / baAiida (the answer) al-jaameAa baAiida	1- جامِعة / تَعْبِدة الجامِعة تَعْبِدة
2- ghurfa / jadiida	2- عُرْفَة / جَدِيدة
3- 'adam / meSr	3- آدَم / مِصر
4- Hasuub / qadiim	4- حاسوب / قَدِيم
5- resaala / Taweela	5- رسالَة / طَوِيلَة
6- madiina / jamiila	6- مَدِينَة / جَمِيلَة
7- Taawela / qaSiira	7- طاوِلَة / قَصِيرَة

Exercise 3: Combine the following pairs of words to make a useful nominal sentence or noun-adjective phrase as in number one.

الْجَمْع

3- The Plural

1- Masculine Plural	jamA el-muThak-kar	1- جَمْع المَذَكَّر
2- Feminine Plural	jamA el-mu'an-nath	2- جَمْع المَوَّث
3- Broken Plural	jamA et-taksiir	3- جَمْع التَكْسِير

Arabic has three types of plurals:

(either "uum" وون ————— or "iin" نين —————)

1- Masculine plural

English	plural	Singular
Egyptian/ Egyptians	مصريون / مصريين meSry <u>uun</u> / meSry <u>iin</u>	مصري meSryy
Emirati / Emiratis	إماراتيون / إماراتيين 'emaraaty <u>uun</u> / 'emaraaty <u>iin</u>	إماراتي 'emaraatyy
Qatari / Qataris	قطريون / قطريين qatary <u>uun</u> / qatary <u>iin</u>	قطري qataryy
Kuwaiti / Kuwaitis	كويتيون / كويتيين kuzwaity <u>uun</u> / kuzwaity <u>iin</u>	كويتي kuzwaityy
Teacher / Teachers	مدرسون / مدرسين mudar-res <u>uun</u> / mudar-res <u>iin</u>	مدرس mudar-res
Manager / Managers	مديرون / مديرين mudiiru <u>un</u> / mudiiri <u>in</u>	مدير mudiir

The noun takes one of pair endings according to grammatical function, which you will learn in the intermediate levels. While in spoken Arabic they use only one of the above suffixes, which is "iin". For example:

Transliteration	English	Arabic
<i>muhandes</i>	Engineer	.....مهندس
<i>momath-thel</i>	Actor	.....ممثل
<i>briiTaanyy</i>	British	.....بريطاني
<i>mudiir</i>	Manager	.....مدير
<i>Mudar-res</i>	Teacher	.....مدرس
<i>muHaamy</i>	Lawyer	.....محامي
<i>muslem</i>	Muslim	.....مسلم
<i>mash-huur</i>	Famous	.....مشهور
<i>maghrebyy</i>	Moroccan	.....مغربي
<i>Tay-yeb</i>	kind	.....طيب

Exercise 4: Give the plural for the below Masculine words:



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT FOUR

The Family

العائلة

UNIT FOUR

The family

Contents

- [The Family](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Culture Notes](#)
- [Vocabulary Practices](#)
- [Grammar usage: possessive pronouns](#)
- [Exercises](#)

The Family

al-Aaa'ela

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: Welcome Maged. Majed: Hello Adam. Adam: It seems you are busy!	A: <i>marHaban maajed.</i> B: <i>'ahlan Adam.</i> A: <i>'anta mashghuul!</i>	آدم: مَرَحِبًا ماجد. ماجد: أَهْلًا آدَم. آدم: أَنْتَ مَشْغُول!
Majed: No, this is my brother Ayman. He's a student here at the university also.	B: <i>laa haTHaa 'akhii 'ayman. huwa Taalib hunaa fii al-jaameAa 'ayDan.</i>	ماجد: لا، هَذَا أَخِي أَيْمَن. هُوَ طَالِبٌ هُنَا فِي الْجَامِعَةِ أَيْضًا.
Adam: Really! Welcome Ayman! Ayman: Hi Adam.	A: <i>feAlan?! marHaban 'ayman!</i> B: <i>'ahlan wa sahlana 'adam</i>	آدم: فَعَلًا؟! مَرَحِبًا أَيْمَن. أَيْمَن: أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا آدَم.
Adam: I have a brother. He also studies at the same university.	A: <i>wa 'anaa 'ayDan lii 'akh yadrus fii nafs el-jaamiAa</i>	آدم: وَأَنَا أَيْضًا لِي أَخ يَدْرُسُ فِي نَفْسِ الْجَامِعَةِ.
Ayman: Nice to meet you.	C: <i>Fursa saAiida jid-dan</i>	أَيْمَن: فَرَصَةٌ سَعِيدَةٌ جِدًّا.
Adam: Nice to meet you too.	A: <i>tashar-rafna</i>	آدم: تَشَرَّفْنَا.

A dialogue:

English	Transliteration	Arabic
extended family	<i>Aa'ela</i>	عائله
immediate family	<i>usra</i>	أسرة
father	<i>'abb / waaled</i>	أبّ / والد
mother	<i>umm / waaleda</i>	أمّ / والدة
sister	<i>ukht</i>	أخت
brother	<i>'akh</i>	أخ
son	<i>ebn</i>	ابن
daughter	<i>ebna</i>	ابنة
grandfather	<i>jadd</i>	جدّ
grandmother	<i>jad-da</i>	جدة
boy	<i>walad</i>	ولد
girl / daughter	<i>bent</i>	بنت
busy	<i>mashghuul / mashghula</i>	مشغول / مشغولة
friend	<i>Sadiiq / Sadiiqa</i>	صديق / صديقة
with	<i>maAa</i>	مع

Vocabulary:

student (female)	Taaleba	طالِبَة
student (male)	Taaleb	طالِب
here	hunaa	هَنا
there	hunaak	هَناكَ
same	nafs	نَفس
really, truly	fiAlan	فِعْلاً
also	'ayDan	أَيْضاً
also	kamaa 'an	كَمَا أَن
I have	lii	لِي
I study	'adrus	أَدْرُس
he studies	yadrus	يَدْرُس

1- suzaan Taaleba fii el-jaameAa.

1- سوزان طالِبَة في الجامِعة.

.....

.....

2- haThehe ukhtii saara.

2- هَذِهِ أُخْتِي سَارَة.

.....

.....

3- 'akhii mashghuul fii el-maktab.

3- أَخِي مَشْغُول في المَكْتَب.

.....

.....

4- heya Taaleba fii nafs el-kul-ly-ya.

4- هِيَ طالِبَة في نَفس الكَلِية.

.....

.....

5- John yadrus al-Aaraby-ya.

5- جون يَدْرُس العَرَبِيَّة.

.....

.....

Culture Notes

Arabs usually assume that the family values have to be shared among all members of the society in general. The extended family plays more important role in Arab society than in the Western society. They visit each other always or often on social occasions if they live in the same city. But many people also feel that this general habit has decreased in recent years.

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 1: Translate into Arabic:

1- What is this?

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- I'm here, He is here.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- I'm really busy.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- Are you busy as well?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- She is very happy.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- I have a brother and he studies Arabic.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- He is an engineer at the same office.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

8- He studies Arabic at the American University.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

9- I have a sister.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Translate the following into English:

أم	جدّ	مكتب	أخت
umm	jadd	maktab	ukht

أب	أخ	كتاب	الكلية
'ab	'akh	ketaab	al-kul-ly-ya

ابنة	ابن	جدة	خال
ebna	ebn	jad-da	khaal

Exercise 3: Circle every member of the family in the below words:

إِسْمِي

Grammar usage

Possessive pronouns:

Possessive pronouns in Arabic are suffixes attached to the nouns. Those you have seen already in previous dialogues:

my name : esmii **أخي** my brother: akhii **إِسْمِكَ / إِسْمِكْ**

English	Transliteration	Arabic
my office	maktabii	مَكْتَبِي
our office	maktabnaa	مَكْتَبِنَا
your office (for a male)	maktabka / ak (spoken)	مَكْتَبِكَ
your office (for a female)	maktabke / ek (spoken)	مَكْتَبِكِ
your office (for plural)	maktabkum	مَكْتَبِكُمْ
his office	maktabhu	مَكْتَبِهِ
her office	maktabhaa	مَكْتَبِهَا
their office	maktabhum	مَكْتَبِهِمْ

your name: *esmka / esmke*

Here are all these suffixes with their subject pronouns, applied on an example:

1- hal 'anta meSryy

1- هل أنت مصرية؟

naAam 'anaa meSryy

نعم؛ أنا مصرية.

2- men 'ayn yaa 'adam?

2- من أين يا آدم؟

.....men dubai.

..... من دبي.

3-hal faransy-ya ya Sara?

3-هل فرنسية يا سارة؟

laa..... 'amriiky-ya.

لا أمريكية

4- man suzan? (-----khaalat sara)

4- من سوزان؟ (..... خاله سارة)

5- 'ayn Adam?

5- أين آدم؟

..... fii meSr

..... في مصر.

Notice that, the possessive pronouns (*ka*) and (*ke*) for your are pronounced as (*ak*) for male and (*ek*) for female in spoken Arabic.

Exercise 4: Practice using subject and possessive pronouns, as in Number one as it is already answered:

Subject pronouns

Transliteration	Arabic
1- 'ayn (bayt/antum)?	1- أين (بيت/أنتم)؟
2- hal (Sadiiq/'anta)Taalib?	2- هل (صديق/أنت) طالب؟
3- hya amriiky-ya wa(usra/hya)fii Canada.	3- هي أمريكية و(أسرة/هي) في كندا.
4- (kuly-ya/huzwa) fii dubai.	4- (كلية/هو) في دبي.
5- (bayt/nHnu)fii al-qaahera.	5- (بيت/نحن) في القاهرة.
6- hal(ketaab/'anti)jadiid?	6- هل (كتاب/أنت) جديد؟
7- 'ayn(maktab/'antum)?	7- أين (مكتب/أنتم)؟
8- hal(jaameAa/'antum) qadiima?	8- هل (جامعة/أنتم) قديمة؟
9- (ebn/'anaa) (esm /huzwa) khalid	9- (ابن/أنا) (اسم / هو) خالد.

Possessive pronouns

Example: (*maa esm / 'anta*)? *Maa esmka*?



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT FIVE

What do you do?

مَاذَا تَعْمَلُ؟

UNIT FIVE

What do you do?

Contents

- [What do you do?](#)

- [Vocabulary](#)

- [Culture notes](#)

- [Vocabulary practice](#)

- [Grammar usage:](#)

[Saying \(to have\) in Arabic](#)

[Feminine Plural](#)

[Broken Plural](#)

- [Exercises](#)

What do you do?

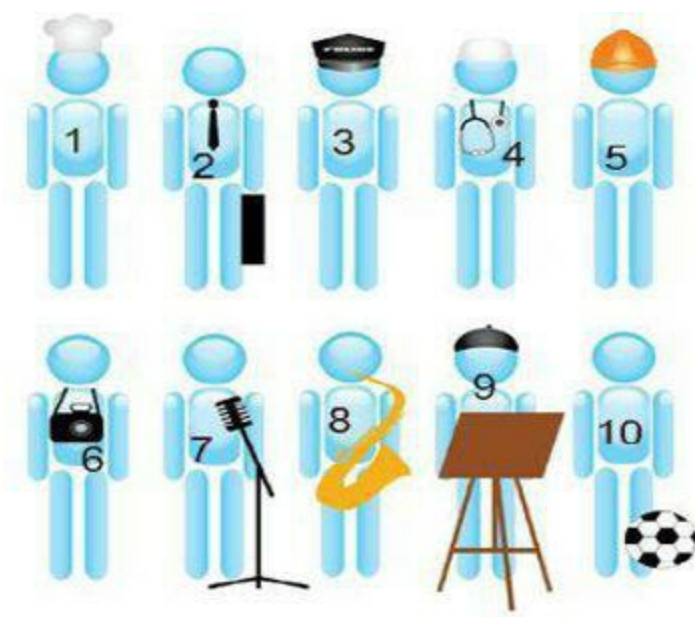
maaThaa tAmal

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Majed: good morning Adam? How are things?	<i>M: SabaaH al-khayr ya 'adam? Kayfa l-Haal?</i>	ماجد: صَاحِ الْخَيْرِ يَا آدَمُ؟ كَيْفَ الْحَالُ؟
Adam: I'm fine, How are you Majed?	<i>A: al-Hamdu lil-lah. wa 'anta kayfa l-Haal ya majed?</i>	آدم: الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ؛ وَأَنْتَ كَيْفَ الْحَالُ يَا مَاجِدُ؟
Majed: I'm Fine, but it seems that you are little exhausted!	<i>M: 'ana bekhayr. wa laken yabduu an-naka murhaq qaliilan!</i>	ماجد: أَنَا يَخَيْرٌ؛ وَلَكِنْ يَبْدُو أَنَّكَ مُرْهَقٌ قَلِيلًا!
Adam: Yes Majed, I'm tired.	<i>A: naAam ya majed. 'anaa taAbaan.</i>	آدم: نَعَمْ يَا مَاجِدُ؛ أَنَا تَعَبَانُ.
Majed: Sorry Adam! Tired of what?!	<i>M: salaamatk ya adam men maa?!</i>	ماجد: سَلَامَتِكَ يَا آدَمُ! مِنْ مَا؟!
Adam: Because of work. I study during	<i>A: besabab ash-shughl.</i>	آدم: بِسَبَبِ الشُّغْلِ؛ فَأَنَا أَدْرَسُ فِي النَّهَارِ؛

A dialogue:

Adam has met Majed once again while he was in a hurry before his lectures at the morning in the AUC (American University in Cairo)

the day, and I work in the evening.	<i>fa'anaa 'adrus fii an-nahaar wa 'aAmal fii al-masaa'.</i>	وَأَعْمَلُ فِي الْمَسَاءِ.
Majed: What do you do?	<i>M: wa mathaa taAmal</i>	ماجد: وَمَاذَا تَعْمَلُ؟
Adam: I'm working at a translation office.	<i>A: 'aAmal bemaktab tarjama</i>	آدم: أَعْمَلُ بِمَكْتَبِ تَرْجَمَةٍ.
Majed: That's good!	<i>M: haThaa jay-yed!</i>	ماجد: هَذَا جَيِّدٌ!
Adam: Yes. Excuse me Majed. I have a lecture now.	<i>A: naAam, Aaftwan majed, baAd iTInak. Aendii muHaaDara al'aan.</i>	آدم: نَعَمْ، عَفْوًا مَاجِدُ؛ بَعْدَ إِذْنِكَ؛ عِنْدِي مُحَاضَرَةٌ الْآنَ.
Majed: Okay Adam, good bye.	<i>M: tafaD-Dal. maAa s-salaama</i>	ماجد: تَفَضَّلْ؛ مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ.
English	Transliteration	Arabic
exhausted	<i>murhaq</i>	مُرْهَقٌ
it seem	<i>yabduu</i>	يَبْدُو
I work	<i>'aAmal</i>	أَعْمَلُ
working	<i>alAamal</i>	الْعَمَلُ
now	<i>al'aan</i>	الْآنَ
little	<i>qaliilan</i>	قَلِيلًا
at	<i>fii</i>	فِي
translation	<i>tarjama</i>	تَرْجَمَةٍ
but	<i>laken</i>	لَكِنْ
pardon / excuse me	<i>Aaftwan</i>	عَفْوًا
permission	<i>iThn</i>	إِذْنٌ
excuse me	<i>baAd iTInak</i>	بَعْدَ إِذْنِكَ
lecture	<i>muHaaDara</i>	مُحَاضَرَةٌ
God bless you!	<i>Salaamatk</i>	سَلَامَتِكَ
possible to	<i>yumken 'an</i>	يُمْكِنُ أَنْ
goodbye	<i>maAa s-salaama</i>	مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ



Look at the Picture and learn about jobs:

N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>tab-baakh</i>	طَبَّاح	1
2	<i>rajul 'aAmaal (business man)</i>	رَجُلْ أَعْمَال	2
3	<i>shurTy</i>	شُرْطَى	3
4	<i>Tabiib</i>	طَبِيب	4
5	<i>muhandes (Engineer)</i>	مُهَنْدِس	5
6	<i>muSatw-wer</i>	مُصَوِّر	6
7	<i>muTreb (singer)</i>	مُطْرِب	7
8	<i>musiiqaar</i>	مُوسِيقَار	8
9	<i>ras-saam</i>	رَسَام	9
10	<i>laaAeb</i>	لَاعِب	10

SAYING TO HAVE: PREPOSITIONS WITH POSSESSIVE SUFFIXES

English	لِ		عِنْدَ		مَعَ	
	L		Aend		maAa	
I have	لِي	lii	عِنْدِي	Aendii	مَعِي	maAii
We have	لَنَا	lanaa	عِنْدَنَا	Aendnaa	مَعَنَا	maAanaa
You have (m)	لَكَ	laka	عِنْدَكَ	Aendka	مَعَكَ	maAaka
You have (f)	لِكِ	lake	عِنْدِكِ	Aendke	مَعَكِ	maAake
You have (pl)	لَكُمْ	lakum	عِنْدَكُمْ	Aendkum	مَعَكُمْ	maAakum
He has	لَهُ	lahu	عِنْدَهُ	Aendhu	مَعَهُ	maAahu
She has	لِهَا	lahaa	عِنْدَهَا	Aendhaa	مَعَهَا	maAahaa
They have	لَهُمْ	lahum	عِنْدَهُمْ	Aendhum	مَعَهُمْ	maAahum

Culture Notes:

Like most of the cultures all over the world, It is common practise in Arabic Culture that when you meet someone who asks you about your condition, or opens any other topic with you, to ask his /or her permission before leaving or finishing the conversation, by saying (*Aafwan / baAd iThnak/ik*) because it's considered rude to leave in such a way without saying anything

Vocabulary practices

Exercise 1: Translate into Arabic:

1. How are you?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2. It seems that you are exhausted.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3. Translation office.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4. Excuse me/ pardon.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5. I have a lecture.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6. I'm studying English now.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7. What do you do?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Grammar usage**Saying (to have) in Arabic**

You have noticed Adam in the dialogue when he said (*Aendii muHaaDara*)= I have lecture. The pronoun forms which he used with the preposition are basically the same like the possessive pronouns forms which mentioned in the previous lesson. The following table introduces these endings with prepositions indicating the meaning of (to have) in Arabic.

Transliteration	Arabic
1-john.....ebn wa bint (L+hwa)	1- جون..... ابن و بنت. (ل+هو)
2-.....'akh fii meSr (L+naHnu)	2-.....أخ في مصر. (ل+نحن)
3-yaa maryam! hal.... dollar? (maAa+'anti)	3- يا مريم! هل..... دولار? (مع+انت)
4-suzan Sadiiq. (l+hya)	4- سوزان صديقة. (ل+هي)
5-.....muHaaDra Taawiila al-yawm! (Aend+hum)	5-.....مُحاضرة طويلة اليوم! (عند+هم)
6-hal.....ketaab Arabii? (Aend+'antum)	6- هل.....كتاب عربي? (عند+أنتم)
7-'akhy.....fii nfs alkuliya. (maAa+hum)	7- أخي.....في نفس الكلية. (مع+هم)
8-hal..... say-yara? (maAa+'anta)	8- هل سيارة؟ (مع+أنت)
9-.....dirham emaraati.(maAa+anaa)	9- درهم إماراتي. (مع+أنا)
10-aHmed.....Sadiiq fii nafs al- jaamiAa. (l+hwa)	10-أحمد.....صديق في نفس الجامعة. (ل+هو)

Three of these combinations form (to have) in Arabic. The difference in how they are used to express possession is:

- (**lii**) is used when referring to owning people: (lii 'akh) = I have a brother

- (**Aend**) is used when referring to owning objects: (Aendii say-yaara) = I have a car

- (**maAa**) is used for referring to owning something right now: (maAii dollar)= I have a dollar. While some Arabic speakers use (Aend) for all cases.

Exercise 2: Use the below prepositions and pronouns which are given in the brackets to express relationships of possession, association, and accompaniment among humans and/or objects:

("ليس" *laysa*)

Negation of (to have)

English	Transliteration	Arabic
I don't have money	<i>Laysa maAii fuluus</i>	ليس معي فُلوس
He doesn't have a car	<i>Laysa Aendahu say-yara</i>	ليس عنده سيارة
They don't have children	<i>Laysa lahum awlaad</i>	ليس لهم أولاد

You can use to negate (to have) in

Arabic, whatever the subject is. See the following examples:

"ات اat"

Exercise 3: Translate into Arabic:

1-I don't have any Emirati money.

<u>B</u>			<u>A</u>
<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2-We don't have a car.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- Sarah doesn't have a lecture tomorrow.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- They don't have an Arabic book.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- Don't you have work today?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Most of the nouns which refer to feminine take the ending

English	plural	Singular
Egyptian/ Egyptians (female)	مصريات <i>meSry-yaat</i>	مصرية <i>meSry-ya</i>
Emirati / Emiratis (female)	إماراتيات 'emaraaty-yaat	إماراتيه 'emaraaty-ya
Kuwaiti / Kuwaitis (female)	كويتيات <i>kuwaity-yaat</i>	كويتيه <i>kuwaity-ya</i>
Teacher / Teachers (female)	مدرسات <i>mudar-resaat</i>	مدرسة <i>mudar-resa</i>
Manager / Managers (female)	مديرات <i>Mudiiraat</i>	مديرة <i>Mudiira</i>
Car / Cars (Considered feminine)	سيارات <i>say-yaraat</i>	سيارة <i>say-yaara</i>
Table / Tables (Considered feminine)	طاولات <i>Taatwelaat</i>	طاولة <i>Taatwela</i>

For example:

English	plural	Singular
Man / Men	رجال <i>rejaal</i>	رَجُل <i>Rajul</i>
Woman / Women	نساء <i>nesaa'</i>	إمْرَأَة <i>'emra'aa</i>
Child / Children	أطفال <i>'aTfaal</i>	طفْل <i>Tefl</i>

3- Broken Plural

Arabic has more than ten patterns of the broken plural which you will learn in intermediate level, as in some English words "child / children, man / men, and woman / women". For example:

Transliteration	English	Arabic
<i>saAa</i>	hour	.....سَاعَة
<i>SafHa</i>	page	.....صَفْحَة
<i>waraqa</i>	paper	.....وَرَقَة
<i>resaala</i>	message	.....رِسَالَة
<i>jad-da</i>	grandmother	.....جَدَّة
<i>Aam-ma</i>	aunt (paternal)	.....عَمَة
<i>khala</i>	aunt (maternal)	.....خَالَة
<i>ghurfa</i>	room	.....غُرْفَة
<i>Hekaaya</i>	story	.....حِكَايَة
<i>Aada</i>	habit	.....عَادَة

Exercise 1: give the plural for the below feminine words:

1- jadd..... ('ajdaad/jad-daat)	1- جَدّ (جَدَات / أَجْدَاد)
2-Aamm.....('aAmaam/Aam-maat)	2- عَمّ..... (أَعْمَام / عَمَّات)
3- khaal.....(khaalaat/ 'akhtvaal)	3- خال (خَالَات / أَخْوَال)
4-'ab.....('abaa' / 'abaat)	4- أَبّ (أَبَاء / أَبَات)
5- umm..... ('amuun/ um-mihaat)	5- أمّ..... (أُمُون / أُمّهَات)
6-kursy.....(kursyaat/karaasy)	6- كرسي (كُرْسِيَات / كُرَاسِي)
7-ketaab.....(ketaabaat/kutub)	7- كتاب (كُتَابَات / كُتُب)
8-Taaleb.....(Tul-laab/Taalebaat)	8- طالب (طَلَاب / طَالِبَات)
9- Taaleba.....(Taalebaat/Tul-laab)	9- طالبة (طَالِبَات / طَلَاب)
10- khaala.....(khaalaat/ 'akhtvaal)	10- خالّه (خَالَات / أَخْوَال)
11- Aam-ma.....(Aam-maat/ 'aAmaam)	11- عمّه (عَمَّات / أَعْمَام)

Exercise 2: Guess and underline the correct plural for the below nouns, note that, some of the plurals you see them at first time, so; you need to figure out the right ones to learn, as you know already the difference between the feminine and the masculine nouns. First one is already answered.



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT SIX

In The Restaurant

في المَطْعَم

UNIT SIX

In The Restaurant

Contents

- [A dialogue](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Language Notes](#)
- [Grammar usage](#)

[Verbs](#)

- [Exercises](#)

In The Restaurant

Fii l-maTAam

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: Congratulation for your success at the exam Maged!	A: <i>mabruuk en-najaaH fii elemteHaan ya majed!</i>	آدم: مَبْرُوكِ النَّجَاحِ فِي الامْتِحَانِ يَا مَاجِد.
Maged: God bless you, thanks Adam.	M: <i>allah yubaarek fiik. shukran ya 'adam.</i>	ماجد: اللهُ يَبَارِكُ فِيكَ؛ شُكْرًا يَا آدَم.
Adam: I'm hungry. Would you like to go for lunch now?	A: <i>'anaa jawAaan. hal tuHeb 'an naThhab lelghadaa' al'an?</i>	آدم: أَنَا جَوْعَانٌ؛ هَلْ تُحِبُّ أَنْ تَذْهَبَ لِلغَدَاءِ الآنَ؟
Maged: Yes; I'm very hungry too.	M: <i>naAam. wa 'anaa 'ayDan jawAaan jed-dan.</i>	ماجد: نَعَمْ؛ وَأَنَا أَيْضًا جَوْعَانٌ جَدًّا.
In the restaurant		
Adam: May I have the menu please?	A: <i>mumken elqaa'ema law samaHt?</i>	آدم: مُمْكِنِ القَائِمَةِ لَوْ سَمَّحْتَ؟
Waiter: Here you are.	<i>an-naadel: tafaD-Daluu.</i>	النَّادِلُ: تَفَضَّلُوا.
Looking at the menu		
Adam: What would	A: <i>maThaa tuHeb 'an</i>	آدم: مَاذَا تُحِبُّ أَنْ تَطْلُبَ

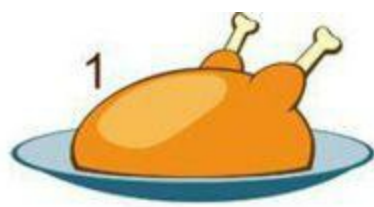
A dialogue:

Learn as Adam and Majed went for lunch, after Majed passed his exam.

you like to eat Majed?	<i>taTlub ya majed?</i>	يا ماجد؟
Maged: I'll take salad, rice and chicken.	<i>M: 'akhuTh salaTa wa urz wa dajaaj.</i>	ماجد: أَخَذَ سَلَطَةَ وَأَرْزَ وَدَجَاج.
Adam: Me too. What would you like to drink?	<i>A: wa 'anaa 'ayDan. wa maaThaa tashrab?</i>	آدم: وَأَنَا أَيْضًا؛ وَمَاذَا تَشْرَبُ؟
Maged: I'll drink orange juice. You, what would you like to drink?	<i>M: 'ashrab AaSiir burtuqaal. wa 'anta, maaThaa tashrab?</i>	ماجد: أَشْرَبُ عَصِيرَ بُرْتَقَال. وَأَنْتَ؛ مَاذَا تَشْرَبُ؟
Adam: coffee with milk please. Without sugar; but after eating.	<i>A: munken qahwa beHaliib. beduun suk-kar. wa laken baAd al'akl.</i>	آدم: مُمَكِّن قَهْوَةَ يَحْلِيْب. يَدُوْن سَكَّر؛ وَلَكِنْ بَعْدَ الْأَكْلِ.
English	Transliteration	Arabic
restaurant	<i>maTAam</i>	مَطْعَم
congratulations	<i>mabruuk</i>	مَبْرُوك
success	<i>An-najaaH</i>	النَّجَاح
God bless you	<i>Allah yubaarek fiik</i>	الله يَبَارِك فِيكَ
hungry	<i>jaawAaan</i>	جَوْعَان
Exam	<i>alemteHaan</i>	الامْتِحَان
I eat	<i>'aa'kul</i>	أَكُل
launch	<i>alghadaa'</i>	العَدَاء
menu	<i>alqaa'ma</i>	العائمه
waiter	<i>an-naadel</i>	النَّادِل
I drink	<i>'ashrab</i>	أَشْرَب
orange	<i>burtuqaal</i>	بُرْتَقَال
juice	<i>ASiir</i>	عصير
without	<i>beduun</i>	يَدُوْن
milk	<i>Haliib</i>	حليب
coffee	<i>qahwa</i>	قهوة
sugar	<i>Suk-kar</i>	سُكَّر

Vocabulary:

rice	<i>urz</i>	أرز
salad	<i>salaTa</i>	سَلَطَة
chicken	<i>dajaaj</i>	دَجَاج
meat	<i>laHm</i>	لَحْم
fish	<i>samak</i>	سَمَك
after	<i>baAd</i>	بَعْد
but	<i>laken</i>	لَكِن
I pay	<i>'adfaA</i>	أَدْفَعُ
the bill	<i>el-faatuura</i>	الْفَاتُورَة
bottle	<i>zujaaja</i>	زُجَاجَة
water	<i>maa' / meyaah</i>	ماء / مِيَاه
salt	<i>melH</i>	مِلْح
spicy	<i>Haar</i>	حَار
cold	<i>baared</i>	بَارِد
hot	<i>saakhen</i>	سَاخِن
ice	<i>thalj</i>	تَلْج



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>dajaaaj</i>	دَجَاج	1
2	<i>shuurba</i>	شوربه	2
3	<i>laHm</i>	لَحْم	3
4	<i>'urz</i>	أرز	4
5	<i>samak</i>	سَمَك	5
6	<i>naqaaneq</i>	نَقَائِق	6

Look at the picture and learn these words:



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>ASiir (juice)</i>	عَصِير 1	
2	<i>AaSiir burtuqaal</i>	عَصِير بُرْتَقَال 2	
3	<i>qalwa (coffee)</i>	قَهْوَة 3	
4	<i>burtuqaal</i>	بُرْتَقَال 4	
5	<i>kaAka</i>	كعكة 5	
6	<i>kaAket shukulata</i>	كعكة شُكُولَاتَه 6	

كَمَا أَنْ

Language Notes:

Most of Arabic speakers use an expression to say "me also / as well" not as in standard Arabic, they say "*wa 'anaa kamaa 'an*", as "*kamaa 'an*" "الزَّمَنَ الْحَاضِرَ" means as well in spoken Arabic.

Grammar usage

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I live	<i>'askun</i>	أَسْكُن	أنا 'anaa
We live	<i>naskun</i>	نَسْكُن	نَحْنُna Hnu
You live (male)	<i>taskun</i>	تَسْكُن	أَنْتَ 'anta
You live (female)	<i>taskunii / taskuniin</i>	تَسْكُنِي / تَسْكُنِينَ	أَنْتِ 'anti
You live (plural)	<i>taskunuu / taskunuun</i>	تَسْكُنُوا / تَسْكُنُونَ	أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He lives	<i>yaskun</i>	يَسْكُن	هُوَ huwa
She lives	<i>taskun</i>	تَسْكُن	هِيَ heya
They live	<i>taskunuu / yaskunuun</i>	يَسْكُنُوا / يَسْكُنُونَ	هُمْ hum

az-zaman elHaaDer

The Present Tense

You have seen Adam says (*'a'kul* = *I eat* – *'ashrab* = *I drink* – *'adrus* = *I study*)

These words are Arabic Verbs in present tense. As if you said: (I eat) it's equal to (I am eating) in Arabic. Also (*'ashrab*) it means: (I drink/or: I am drinking). As Arabic has just one present tense.

In Arabic; the verb itself has the subject. As it's expressed in a prefix = (letter at the beginning)/ or a prefix and a suffix = (letter at the end).

This means that, all verbs in the Arabic language are regular! You don't need to change the root of the verb at any tense (past, present and future).

So, to express (I eat/ or I'm eating): (*'anaa 'a'kul*), you can simply say: (*'a'kul*) without a pronoun, as the verb itself tells about it.

The below table lists the full conjugation of the present tense for verb; (**to live**).

To eat

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I eat	<i>'a'kul</i>	أَكُل	أنا 'anaa
We eat	<i>na'kul</i>	نَأْكُل	نَحْنُna Hnu
You eat (male)	<i>ta'kul</i>	تَأْكُل	أَنْتَ 'anta
You eat (female)	<i>ta'kulii / ta'kuliin</i>	تَأْكُلِينَ / تَأْكُلِينَ	أَنْتِ 'anti
You eat (plural)	<i>ta'kuluu / ta'kuluun</i>	تَأْكُلُوا / تَأْكُلُونَ	أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He eats	<i>ya'kul</i>	يَأْكُل	هُوَ huwa
She eats	<i>ta'kul</i>	تَأْكُل	هِيَ heya
They eat	<i>ta'kuluu / ya'kuluun</i>	يَأْكُلُوا / يَأْكُلُونَ	هُمْ hum

You can see in the table that, there are two forms for the verb with the pronouns (you for a female, you for plural and they). A form with the ending (**uu**) and the other one with (**uun**), both of them have a grammatical usage in formal Arabic, which you will learn about in the intermediate level. While most of Arabic speakers use the ones with (**uu**) at the end, many gulf Arabs use the form with the ending (**uun**). The following tables show conjugations of some verbs.

To take

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I take	'a 'khuTh	أَخَذَ	أنا 'anaa
We take	na 'khuTh	تَأَخَذَ	نَحْنُ naH nu
You take (male)	ta 'khuTh	تَأَخَذَ	أَنْتَ 'anta
You take (female)	ta 'khuThii / ta 'khuThiin	تَأَخَذِي تَأَخَذِينَ	أَنْتِ 'anti
You take (plural)	ta 'khuThuu / ta 'khuThuun	تَأَخَذُوا تَأَخَذُونَ	أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He takes	ya 'khuTh	تَأَخَذَ	هُوَ huwa
She takes	ta 'khuTh	تَأَخَذَ	هِيَ heyā
They take	ta 'khuThuu / ya 'khuThuun	تَأَخَذُوا تَأَخَذُونَ	هُمْ hum

To drink

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I drink	'a shrab	أَشْرَبَ	أنا 'anaa
We drink	na shrab	نَشْرَبَ	نَحْنُ na Hnu
You drink (male)	ta shrab	تَشْرَبَ	أَنْتَ 'anta
You drink (female)	ta shrabii / ta shrabiin	تَشْرَبِينَ / تَشْرَبِينَ	أَنْتِ 'anti
You drink (plural)	ta shrabuu / ta shrabuun	تَشْرَبُوا / تَشْرَبُونَ	أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He drinks	ya shrab	يَشْرَبَ	هُوَ huwa
She drinks	ta shrab	تَشْرَبَ	هِيَ heyā
They drink	ta shrabuu / ya shrabuun	يَشْرَبُوا / يَشْرَبُونَ	هُمْ hum

To order

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I order	'aTlub	أَطْلَبُ	أنا 'anaa
We order	naTlub	نَطْلُبُ	نحن naHnu
You order (male)	taTlub	تَطْلُبُ	أنتَ 'anta
You order (female)	taTlubii / taTlubiiin	تَطْلُبِي / تَطْلُبِينَ	أنتِ 'anti
You order (plural)	taTlubuu / taTlubuun	تَطْلُبُوا / تَطْلُبُونَ	أنتم 'antum
He orders	yaTlub	يَطْلُبُ	هو huwa
She orders	taTlub	تَطْلُبُ	هي heya
They order	taTlubuu / yaTlubuun	يَطْلُبُوا / يَطْلُبُونَ	هم hum

To like

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I like	'auHebb	أُحِبُّ	أنا 'anaa
We like	nuHebb	نُحِبُّ	نحن naHnu
You like (male)	tuHebb	تُحِبُّ	أنتَ 'anta
You like (female)	tuHebbii / tuHebbiiin	تُحِبِي / تُحِبِينَ	أنتِ 'anti
You like (plural)	tuHebbuu / tuHebbuun	تُحِبُوا / تُحِبُونَ	أنتم 'antum
He likes	yuHebb	يُحِبُّ	هو huwa
She likes	tuTlub	تُحِبُّ	هي heya
They like	tuHebbuu / yuHebbuun	يُحِبُوا / يُحِبُونَ	هم hum

To want

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I want	'auriid	أُرِيدُ	أنا 'anaa
We want	nuriid	نُرِيدُ	نحن naHnu
You want (male)	turiid	تُرِيدُ	أنتَ 'anta
You want (female)	turiidii / turiidiiin	تُرِيدِي / تُرِيدِينَ	أنتِ 'anti
You want (plural)	turiiduu / turiiduun	تُرِيدُوا / تُرِيدُونَ	أنتم 'antum
He wants	yuriid	يُرِيدُ	هو huwa
She wants	turiid	تُرِيدُ	هي heya
They want	turiiduu / yuriiduun	يُرِيدُوا / يُرِيدُونَ	هم hum

To study

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I study	<i>'adrus</i>	أَدْرُس	أَنَا 'anaa
We study	<i>nadrus</i>	نَدْرُس	نَحْنُ naHn u
You study (male)	<i>tadrus</i>	تَدْرُس	أَنْتَ 'anta
You study (female)	<i>tadrusii / tadrusiin</i>	تَدْرُسِينَ / تَدْرُسِي	أَنْتِ 'anti
You study (plural)	<i>tadrusuu / tadrusuun</i>	تَدْرُسُوا / تَدْرُسُونَ	أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He studies	<i>yadrus</i>	يَدْرُس	هُوَ huwa
She studies	<i>tadrus</i>	تَدْرُس	هِيَ heya
They study	<i>tadrusuu / yadrusuun</i>	يَدْرُسُوا / يَدْرُسُونَ	هُمْ hum

لَا

Negation of the Present

To negate the present tense we have learned, just use the particle " *Laa 'a'kul -laa 'ashrab -laa 'adrus* لا أأكل - لا أشرب - لا أدرس " before the verb. For example, to say (I don't eat, don't drink, I don't study).

- 1- 'adam fii madiina saghiira. 1- آدم في مدينة صغيرة.
- taskun تَسْكُنُ 1- 2- يَسْكُنُ yaskun 2- 3- أَسْكُنُ 'askun 3-
- 2- laa Dajaaj Haar ya Muhammad. 2- لا دجاج حارّ يا مُحَمَّد.
- ya'akul يَأْكُلُ 1- 2- تَأْكُلِي ta'akulii 2- 3- تَأْكُلُ ta'akul 3-
- 3- 'akhii Fii jaameAat Princeton. 3- أخي في جامعة برينستون
- yadrusuun يَدْرُسُونَ 1- 2- أَدْرُسُ 'adrus 3- يَدْرُسُ yadrus 3-
- 4- men faDlek, 'anaa AaSiir burtuqaal. 4- لَوْ سَمَخْتُ، انا عَصِير بَرْتِقَال .
- uriid أُرِيدُ 1- 2- تُرِيدُ turiid 2- 3- يُرِيدُوا turiiduul 3-
- 5- maaThaa 'an taTlub yaa kariim.? 5- ماذا أن تَطْلُبْ يا كريم ؟
- yuHeb يُحِبُ 1- 2- تُحِبُ tuHeb 2- 3- تَحِبُوا tuHebuul 3-
- 6- 'abii qahwa fii S-SabaaH. 6- أباي قَهْوَة في الصباح
- ya'kul يَأْكُلُ 1- 2- يَشْرَبُ yashrab 2- 3- تَشْرَبُ tashrab 3-
- 7- maAa 'ausratii fii bayt kabiir. 7- مع أسرتي في بيت كبير.
- 'askun أَسْكُنُ 1- 2- يَسْكُنُ yaskun 2- 3- تَسْكُنُ taskun 3-

Exercise 1 : Choose the correct answer:

جيداً

Exercise 2: Translate into Arabic:

1- Where do you live?

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2-I study and live in the United Arab of Emirates.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- I like to drink coffee in the morning

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- Do you want to order now?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- Do you like Arabic food?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- She doesn't like tea.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- In this restaurant, we eat beautiful Arabic dishes.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

8- I like Arabic language.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

9-The students don't want to study hard (well = *jay-yedan*)

English	Transliteration	Arabic
I work	'aAml	أَعْمَلُ
I know	'aAref	أَعْرِفُ
I understand	'afham	أَفْهَمُ
I hear	'asmaA	أَسْمَعُ
I read	'aqra'	أَقْرَأُ
I sit	'ajles	أَجْلِسُ
I go out	'akhruj	أَخْرَجُ
I listen	'astameA	أَسْتَمِعُ
I sleep	'anaam	أَنَامُ
I watch	'aushaahed	أَشَاهِدُ
I travel	'ausaafer	أَسَافِرُ

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةً	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

10- We don't want to eat now.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 3: Conjugate the following verbs with the subject pronouns.

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
<i>'anaa</i>			أنا
<i>naHnu</i>			نحن
<i>'anta</i>			أنت
<i>'ante</i>			أنتِ
<i>'antum</i>			أنتم
<i>buwa</i>			هو
<i>beya</i>			هي
<i>bum</i>			هم

Use the following tables to conjugate:













Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT SEVEN

Asking for Directions

الأتجاهات

UNIT SEVEN

Asking for Directions

Contents

- [A dialogue](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Numbers & The time](#)
- [Grammar usage](#)
- [Exercises](#)

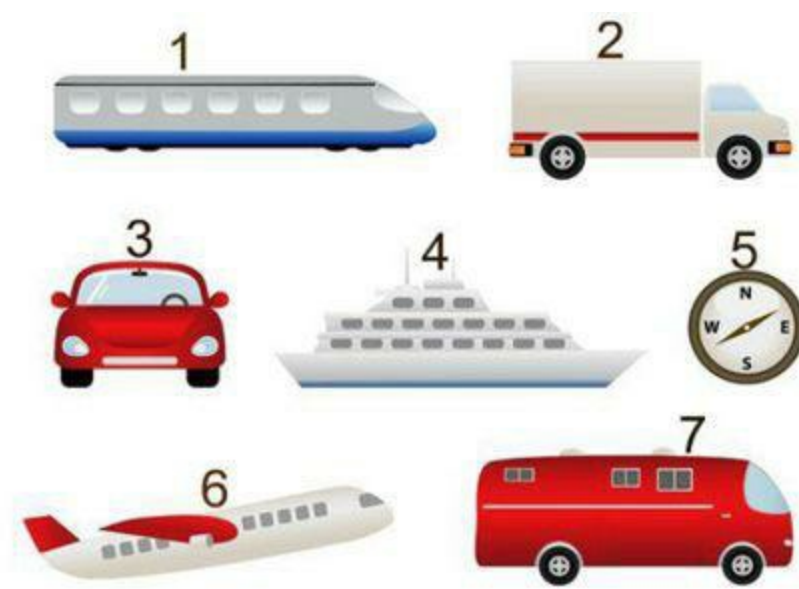
ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

Alet-tejaahaat

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Majed: Excuse me, do you know where is the post office please?	M: law samHat: hal taAref 'ayna maktab albariid men faDlek?	ماجد: لَو سَمَحْت: هَلْ تَعْرِفْ أَيْنَ مَكْتَبِ الْبَرِيدِ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ؟
Traffic Officer: Sure, it's close to here, you can walk straight ahead until you get to the end of the street.	O: 'akiid: fahuwa qariib men hunaa , yumkenuka 'an tamshii Aalaa Tuul le'akher ash-shariiA.	ضَايِبُ الْمُرُورِ: أَكِيدُ: فَهُوَ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ هُنَا: يُمْكِنُكَ أَنْ تَمْشِيَ عَلَى طُولِ لِأَخِرِ الشَّارِعِ.
Majed: How far it is almost?	M: wa, kam elmsaafa taqriiban?	ماجد: وَكَمْ الْمَسَافَةِ تَقْرِيْبًا؟
The officer: about 6 buildings, at first traffic light turn right, so the post office is there.	O: baAd Hawaalii set benaayaat, Aend 'awwal esharat muruur, talef ela alyamiin, famaktab el-bariid hunaa.	الضَّايِبُ: بَعْدَ حَوَالِي سِتِّ بِنَايَاتٍ: عِنْدَ أَوَّلِ إِشَارَةِ مُرُورٍ: تَلَفْ إِلَى الْيَمِينِ; فَمَكْتَبُ الْبَرِيدِ هُنَاكَ.
Majed: On which side of the road?	M: Aalaa ayy jaaneb men aT-TariiQ?	ماجد: عَلَى أَيِّ جَانِبٍ مِنَ الطَّرِيقِ؟
The officer: On the left side, Before the Lebanese restaurant.	O: Aalaa a-sh-shemaal, qabl almaTAam al-lebnaanii.	الضَّايِبُ: عَلَى الشَّمَالِ: قَبْلَ الْمَطْعَمِ اللَّبْنَانِيِّ.
Majed : Thanks a lot mister officer.	M:Shukran kaTheran HaDret eD-DaabeT.	ماجد: شُكْرًا كَثِيرًا حَضْرَةَ الضَّايِبِ.
The officer: Not at all, good-bye.	O: Afwan. maA alsalaama.	الضَّايِبُ: عَفْوًا; مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Traffic Officer	<i>DaabeT el-muruur</i>	صَاطِطُ المَرُورِ
officer	<i>Daabet</i>	صاطط
straight ahead	<i>Aalaa Tuul</i>	عَلَى طُولِ
side	<i>jaaneb</i>	جَانِبِ
directions	<i>Alet-tejaahaat</i>	الآتِجَاهَاتِ
road	<i>aT-Tariiq</i>	الطَّرِيقِ
building	<i>benaaya</i>	بِنَايَة
post office	<i>maktab el-bariid</i>	مَكْتَبُ البَرِيدِ
How long	<i>kam Tuul</i>	كَمْ طُولِ
traffic light	<i>eshaarat muruur</i>	إِشَارَة مُرُورِ
distance	<i>masaafa</i>	مَسَافَة
right	<i>yamiin</i>	يَمِينِ
left	<i>shemaal / yasaar</i>	شِمالِ / يَسَارِ
you	<i>HaDret</i>	حَضْرَة

Vocabulary:



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>qeTaar</i>	قطار	1
2	<i>say-yaarat esAaaf (ambulance)</i>	سيارة إسعاف	2
3	<i>say-yaara</i>	سيارة	3
4	<i>safiina</i>	سفينة	4
5	<i>buuSla</i>	بوصلة	5
6	<i>Taa'era</i>	طائرة	6
7	<i>Haafela</i>	حافلة	7

Look at the picture and learn these words:

Number	Transliteration	Arabic script	Arabic Numeral
0	<i>Sefr</i>	صفر	0
1	<i>waHed</i>	واحد	1
2	<i>'ethnaan/'ethnayn</i>	اثنان / ائنين	2
3	<i>thalatha</i>	ثلاثة	3
4	<i>'arbaAa</i>	أربعة	4
5	<i>khamasa</i>	خمسة	5
6	<i>set-ta</i>	سنة	6
7	<i>sabAa</i>	سبعة	7
8	<i>thamaaneyya</i>	ثمانية	8
9	<i>tesAa</i>	تسعة	9
10	<i>Aashara</i>	عشرة	10

The below table shows the Arabic numbers from Zero to Ten

The numerals used in English are of Arabic origin, but Arabs nowadays use the Hindi ones sometimes, because of business ties with India in past.

Days of the week

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Sunday	<i>yawm mel-'aHad</i>	يَوْمَ الْأَحَدِ
Monday	<i>yawm el-ethnayn</i>	يَوْمَ الْإِثْنَيْنِ
Tuesday	<i>yawm ethulathaa'</i>	يَوْمَ الْثَلَاثَاءِ
Wednesday	<i>yawm el-arbeAa'</i>	يَوْمَ الْأَرْبَعَاءِ
Thursday	<i>yawm el-khamees</i>	يَوْمَ الْخَمِيسِ
Friday	<i>yawm el-jumuAa</i>	يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ
Saturday	<i>yawm as-sabt</i>	يَوْمَ السَّبْتِ

Days of the week are mostly driven from numbers as per the following table.

Months

English	Transliteration	Arabic
January	<i>yanayer</i>	يناير
February	<i>fubrayer</i>	فبراير
March	<i>maares</i>	مارس
April	<i>'abriil</i>	ابريل
May	<i>mayuu</i>	مايو
June	<i>yuunyuu</i>	يونيو
July	<i>yuulyuu</i>	يوليو
August	<i>'aughusTus</i>	أغسطس
September	<i>sebtamber</i>	سبتمبر
October	<i>'auktober</i>	أكتوبر
November	<i>nuufamber</i>	نوفمبر
December	<i>diisamber</i>	ديسمبر

muHar-ram, Safar, rabiiA 'aw-wal, rabiiA thaanii, jumaad 'aw-wal, jumaad thaanii, rajab, shaAbaan, ramadaan, shaw-waal, Thu l-qeAda, Thu l-Hej-ja.

مَحْرَم، صَفَر، رَبِيعِ أَوَّل، رَبِيعِ ثَانِي، جُمَادِ أُولَى، جُمَادِي ثَانِيه، رَجَب، شَعْبَانَ، رَمَضَانَ، شَوَّال، ذُو الْقَعْدَةِ، ذُو الْحِجَّة.

As you see the above table shows the Arabized months from the Latin ones. Also there are the Arabic months which used for the Islamic calendar. Thos months depend on the **lunar** calendar.

	Ordinal Numbers	
The first	<i>al-'aw-wal</i>	الأوّل
The second	<i>ath-thaani</i>	الثّاني
The third	<i>ath-thaaaleth</i>	الثّالث
The fourth	<i>ar-raabeA</i>	الرّابع
The fifth	<i>al-khaames</i>	الخامس
The sixth	<i>as-saades</i>	السّادس
The seventh	<i>as-saabeA</i>	السّابع
The eighth	<i>ath-thaamen</i>	الثّامن
The ninth	<i>at-taaseA</i>	الثّاسع
The tenth	<i>al-Aaasher</i>	العاشر
The eleventh	<i>al-Hadii Aashar</i>	الحادي عشر
The twelfth	<i>ath-thaanii Aashar</i>	الثّاني عشر

Arabic ordinal numbers can be easily distinguished from the numbers used in counting. The table below includes the numbers first to twelve; they are presented together with the definite article. This is the form used in telling the time.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
One book	<i>ketaab waaHed</i>	كتاب واحد
One message	<i>resaala waaHeda</i>	رسالة واحدة
Two (m)students	<i>Taalebtaan ethnaan</i>	طالبان اثنان
Two (f)students	<i>Taalebataan ethnataan</i>	طالبتان اثنتان

Grammar usage

1-Please note that the number has got to have the same gender as the noun! As below:

(ان-ين)

Arabic has a dual form which is used by adding طالب- طالبان to the noun (Taaleb / Taalebaan or Taalebain) (ان-ين) & the same thing with the feminine nouns by adding (ة) with just one more thing the (Taa Marbuuta) at the end of the feminine noun (ت) becomes (taa maftuha) (ان-ين) before adding the suffixes. ثلاث سيارات، عشر سيارات. as in the above examples.

2- when you count from 3 to 10, use the plural for the counted nouns. For example: thalaath say-yaraat, Aashar say-yaaraat

أحد عشر سيارة؛ مليون سيارة

But after (10) use the singular nouns again, even for billions. For example:

Ahada Aashar say-yaara, melyuun say-yaara

English	Transliteration	Arabic
hour/ watch	saaAa	ساعة
day	yaawm	يوم
week	'asbuuA	أسبوع
month	shahr	شهر
year	sana	سنة
century	qarn	قرن
time	waqt	وقت
quarter	rubA	ربع
third	thulth	ثلث
Less: literally: except	il-la	إلا
Minute	daqeeqa	دقيقة
Minutes	daqaa'eq	دقائق

Learn these words:

usually	Aadatan	عادة
sometimes	'aHyaanan	أحياناً
always	daa'eman	دائماً
rarely	naaderan	نادراً
immediately	Haalan	حالاً
after	baAd	بَعْدَ
before	qabl	قَبْلَ

كَمْ السَّاعَة؟

What is the time?



الثامنة وعَشر

ath-thaamena wa Aashr



العاشيرة وثَلث

al-Aaashera wa thuluth



الخامسة إلا رَبع

al-khaamesa il-laa rubA



الثانية وخَمس

ath-thaanya wa khams



الرابعة إلا ثَلث

ar-raabeAa il-laa thuluth



الخامسة إلا عَشر

al-khaamesa il-laa Aashar

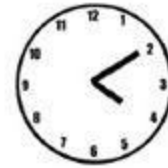
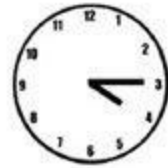
Kam es-saaAa?

The ordinal numbers are used in formal Arabic to tell the time. For example, if it is 1:15, you simply

say in Arabic, "*al-waaHeda wa rubuA*"

And "*wa thuluth*" for 1:20, and "*wa neSf*" for 1:30, and "*ethnain 'el-laa thuluth*" for 1:40, and "*ethnain 'el-laa rubuA*" for 1:45.

Exercise 1: Draw the Hour for the time written below:



Exercise 2: Write down the time in Arabic below the pictures:



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT EIGHT

At the Supermarket?

فِي السُّوقِ (السُّوبر مَارْكِت)

UNIT EIGHT

At the Supermarket?

Contents

- [A dialogue](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Culture Notes](#)
- [Vocabulary practice](#)

[IDaafa Possession Construction](#)

- [Exercises](#)

At the Supermarket

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Sara: Excuse me, where can I find the cheese, please?	A: : Aafwan, 'ayn 'ajed al-jubn men faDlek.	سارة: عفوآ، أين أجد الجبن من فضلك.
Clerk: Yes miss, it's there in the dairy section, at the end of this corridor.	C: naAm ya anesa; hunaak fii qesm el'albaan fii 'akher haTHaa al-mamar.	الموظف: نعم يا آنسة؛ هناك في قسم الألبان؛ في آخر هذا الممر.
Sara: Thanks.	A: shukran.	سارة: شكراً.
Clerk: Is there anything else you want?	C: hal turiidiin 'ay shay' akhar?	الموظف: هل تريدن أي شيء آخر؟

fes-souq (es-super market)

A dialogue:

Sara went to the supermarket to buy some of her needs.

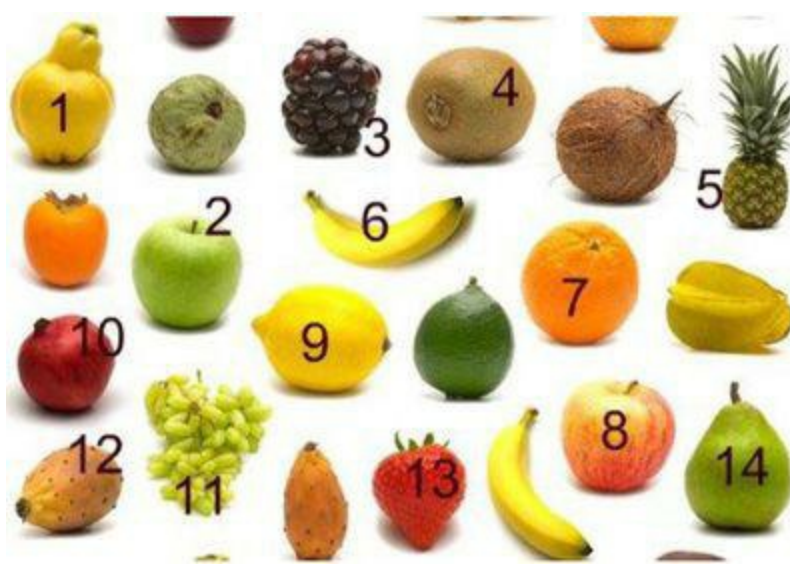
Sara: Yes, can you also tell me where to find the shampoo?	A: naAam. hal men l-mumken 'an taquul lii 'ayDan 'ayn ash-shaampuu?	سارة: نعم؛ هل من الممكن أن تقول لي أيضاً أين الشامبو؟
Clerk: Sure, it's at the health and beauty supplies in aisle 4.	C: 'akiid. Aend rukn alAenaaya beS-SeHa wa 'adawaat at-tajmiil fii almamar 4.	الموظف: أكيد. عند ركن العناية بالصحة وأدوات التجميل في الممر 4.
Sara: Thanks a lot.	A: Shukran jed-dan.	سارة: شكراً جداً.
Clerk: You're welcome, have a nice day.	C: nahaarek saAiid.	الموظف: تبارك سعيد.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
market/ super market	<i>suuq</i>	سُوق
where	<i>'ayn</i>	أَيْنَ
I find	<i>'ajed</i>	أَجِدُ
possible	<i>mumken</i>	مُمْكِن
Is it possible to	<i>hal men-l-mumken</i>	هَلْ مِنْ الْمُمْكِنِ؟
cheese	<i>aljubn</i>	الْجُبْن
clerk	<i>muwaTH-THaf</i>	مُوظَّف
department / section	<i>qesm</i>	قِسْم
dairy	<i>al-'albaan</i>	الْأَلْبَان
corridor / aisle	<i>mamar</i>	مَمْر
anything	<i>'ayy shay'</i>	أَيَّ شَيْءٍ
I want	<i>uriid</i>	أُرِيدُ
else	<i>'akhar</i>	آخَرَ
beauty	<i>at-tajmiil</i>	التَّجْمِيل
happy / nice day	<i>nahaar saAiid</i>	نَهَار سَعِيد
Health	<i>aS-SeHa</i>	الصَّحَّة
supplies	<i>'adaawaat</i>	أَدْوَان

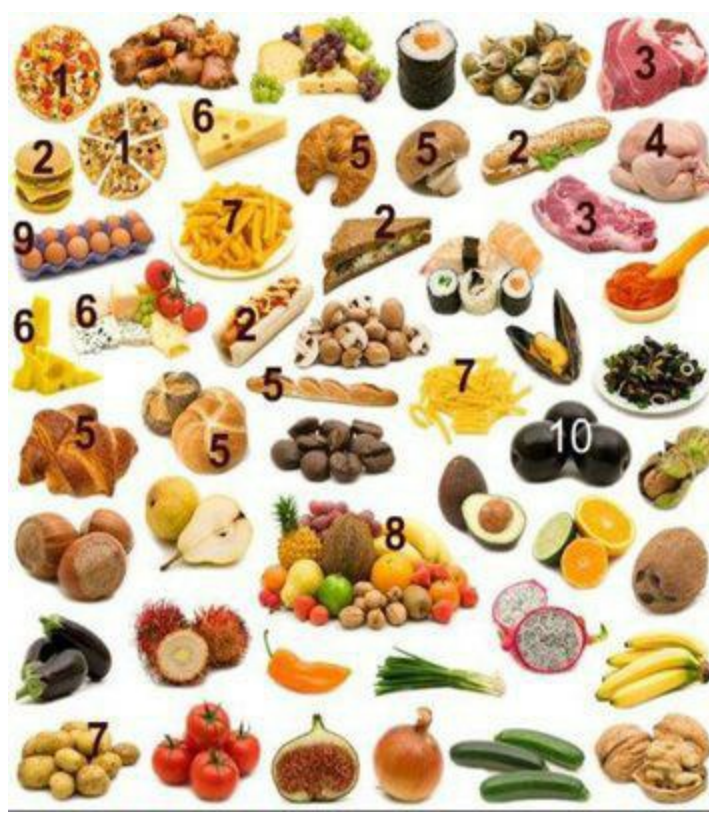
Vocabulary



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>khas</i>	خَسْ	1
2	<i>jazar</i>	جَزَر	2
3	<i>kheyaar</i>	خِيَار	3
4	<i>qarnabiiT</i>	قَرْنَبِيط	4
5	<i>baSal</i>	بَصَل	5
6	<i>khuDaar (Vegetables)</i>	خُصَار	6
7	<i>baThenjaan</i>	بَاذِنْجَان	7
8	<i>zanjabiil</i>	زَنْجَبِيل	8
9	<i>malfouf /kurunb</i>	مَلْفُوف / كَرْنَب	9
10	<i>TamaaTem</i>	طَمَاطِم	10
11	<i>kurunb 'aHmar</i>	كَرْنَب أَحْمَر	11
12	<i>broukly</i>	بِرُوكَلِي	12
13	<i>baazel-laa'</i>	بَازَلَاء	13



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>jwaafa</i>	جَوَافِه	1
2	<i>tuf-faaH</i>	تَفَاح	2
3	<i>Aenab</i>	عِنَب	3
4	<i>sham-maam</i>	شَمَام	4
5	<i>'anaanaas</i>	أَنَانَس	5
6	<i>mouz</i>	موز	6
7	<i>burtuqaal</i>	بُرْتَقَال	7
8	<i>tuf-faaH</i>	تَفَاح	8
9	<i>laymoun</i>	لَيْمُون	9
10	<i>rum-maan</i>	رَمَان	10
11	<i>Aenab</i>	عِنَب	11
12	<i>tiin</i>	يِين	12
13	<i>faraatolah</i>	فَرَاوَلَه	13
14	<i>kum-methraa</i>	كَمْتَرِي	14



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>faTiira / bitza</i>	قَطِيرَة / بِيْتِزَا	1
2	<i>shaTiira</i>	شَطِيرَة	2
3	<i>laHm</i>	لَحْم	3
4	<i>dajaaj</i>	دَجَاج	4
5	<i>klubz</i>	خُبْز	5
6	<i>jubn</i>	جُبْن	6
7	<i>baTaaTes</i>	بَطَاطِس	7
8	<i>faTwaakeh</i>	قَوَاكِيه	8
9	<i>bayD</i>	بَيْض	9
10	<i>zaytoun</i>	زَيْتُون	10

عَفْوًا

Culture Notes:

Like most of the cultures all over the world, it is a common practise in Arabic Culture that when you want to ask someone about something you start the conversation by saying excuse me (*Aafwan*) **بعد إذنك** , also if you want to ask somebody for his /or her permission before asking something,

before leaving or finishing the conversation, you can say ^{الإضافة} / *baAd iThnak/ik*)= excuse me, as it's considered rude to leave in without saying anything.

Vocabulary practice

Exercise 1: Translate the following into Arabic:

1. Excuse me. Where can I find the water, please?

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2. Where is the chicken/ beef / fish please?.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3. At the end of this corridor.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4. Excuse me/ pardon!

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5. Can you tell me please where can I find the sugar?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6. Do you want anything else?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7. Have a nice day.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

ابن العم ebn el-Aamim	بنت الأخ bent el-'akh	ابن الأخ ebn el-'akh
سيارة آدم say-yaarat 'adam	كتاب سارة ketaab saara	بنت الخال bent el-khaal
عائلة الوالد Aaa'elat el-waaled	جامعة الأزهر jaameAat el-azhar	مدينة القاهرة madiinat el-qaahera

IDaafa

Possession

One of the essential structures of Arabic is (*IDaafa*) which consists of two or more nouns are put together to make a possession. For example:

Son of the brother	Daughter of the brother	Son of the uncle
Daughter of the uncle	Book of Sara	Car of Adam
City of Cairo	University of Al-Azhar	Family of the father

1- Remember that (*IDaafa*) equal in English when you say (in literal translation) :

جامعة العين jaameAat el-Ayn	مكتب الرئيس maktab er-ra'iis	عائلة والدي Aa'elat waaledy
بنت أختي bent uklity	رسالة أخي resaalat 'akhy	يَمْرَة تليفوني nemrat -telephouny

2-Just the last word in (*IDaafa*) can take the article (*al*) or a passive suffix, like;

جامعة العين jaameAat el-Ayn University of Al-Ayn	عائلة والدي Aa'elat waaledy The family of my father
رسالة أخي resaalat 'akhy The message of my brother	يَمْرَة تليفوني nemrat -telephouny The number of my phone

3-For *IDaafa* in spoken Arabic you can observe the (*Ta' marbuuta*) which is the last letter and we pronounce it as (a) is pronounced as normal *taa'* as in:

	<u>B</u>		<u>A</u>	
'akhtii	أختي	ghurfat	غرفة	
Aam-mii	عمّي	bayt	بيت	
ukhtii	أختي	ebn	ابن	
Sadiiqatii	صديقتي	bint	بنت	
as-salaam	السّلام	ebn	ابن	
al-maktab	المكتب	Aaa'elat	عائلة	
telefuunii	تليفوني	shaarA	شارع	
al-lughaat	اللّغات	raqam	رقم	
'aBuu THaby	أبوطني	kul-ly-yat	كلية	
twaaledatii	والدتي	jaameAat	جامعة	

Exercise 1: How to write the below in Arabic:

1- This is Sara's car.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّر	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- Where is Cairo University please?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّر	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- What's your phone number?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- My nephew is a student at an Arabic school.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- My niece is a student at the Arabic school of girls.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- I live in Kuwait city.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- I study at Abu Dhabi university.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يخَيِّر	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Match each word in (A) with an appropriate word in (B) to make a useful *IDAafa*:



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT NINE

What happened yesterday

يَوْمَ صَعَبٌ لِآدَمَ فِي الْجَامِعَةِ

UNIT NINE

What happened yesterday

Contents

- [A story](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Grammar usage](#)
- [Language Notes](#)
- [Exercises](#)

Transliteration	Arabic
<p><i>Kaan yawm l-'aHad yawm SaAb ben-nesba le-'adam.</i></p> <p><i>Thahab 'elaa l-jaameAa muta'akheran. Le'an-na alHaafela faatat wa lam yalHaq behaa.</i></p>	<p>كان يوم الأحد يوم صعب بالنسبة لِأَدَم؛</p> <p>ذَهَبَ إِلَى الجامعة مُتَأَخِّرًا؛ لِأَنَّ الحافلة فانت وَلَمْ يَلْحَقْ بِها.</p>
<p>Sunday was a hard day for Adam.</p> <p>He went to the university late because he missed the bus and he didn't catch it.</p>	
<p><i>faatat 'adam muHaDara muhem-ma. Le'an-nahu SaHa muta'akheran wa waSal 'elaa l-jaameAa baAd aTH-THuhr.</i></p> <p><i>wa Aendamaa dakhil al-muHaaDara ath-thaaneya, kaan al-ustaaTh munzaAejan menhu besabab at-ta'akh-khur. wa le'an-nahu naseya ketaaban haam-man fil-bayt. fa-qad jaa'a bel-Haqiiba alkhaTa'.</i></p>	<p>فانت أَدَمَ مُحاضرة مُهمّة؛ لِأَنَّهُ صَحَا مُتَأَخِّرًا وَوَصَلَ إِلَى الجامعة بَعْدَ الظُّهر؛</p> <p>وَعِنْدَمَا دَخَلَ المُحاضرة الثّانية؛ كان الأستاد مُتزعجًا مِنْهُ يَسْتَبِ التّأخّر؛ وَلِأَنَّهُ نَسِيَ كِتابًا هَامًا فِي البَيْت؛ فَقد جاءَ بِالْحَقِيبَةِ الخَطَأ.</p>

yawm SaAb le-'adam fel-jaameAa

A hard day for Adam at the university

Adam missed an important lecture, because he woke up late, and reached the university in the afternoon.

When he entered the second lecture, the professor was uncomfortable with him because of the delay, and because he had forgotten an important book at home, as he came with the wrong bag.

*wa laken-nahu qaal as-sabab lel-ustaaTh.
wa leThalek samaHa lahu 'an yadkhul aS-
Saf.*

وَلِكَيْنِهٖ قَالَ السَّبَبُ لِلْأَسْتَاذِ؛ وَلِذَلِكَ سَمَّحَ
لَهُ أَنْ يَدْخُلَ الصَّفَّ.

But he said to the professor the reason, so he allowed him to enter the class.

*rajaAa 'adam 'elal-bayt baAd al-
muHaaDaraat wa huwa zaAlaan jed-dan
lemaa Hadath.*

رَجَعَ أَدَمُ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ بَعْدَ الْمَحَاضِرَاتِ وَهُوَ
زَعْلَانٌ جِدًّا لِمَا حَدَّثَ؛

*wa naam mubak-keran le-yaSHuu qabl
mawAed el-jaameAa bewaqt kaaf fiS-
SabaaH*

وَنَامَ مُبَكَّرًا لِيُصْحَوْ قَبْلَ مَوْعِدِ الْجَامِعَةِ بَوَاقْتِ
كَافٍ فِي الصَّبَاحِ.

Adam came back home after the lectures and he was very upset because of what happened.

And he slept early in order to wake up before the university with enough time in the morning.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
hard / difficult	SaAb	صَعْب
easy	sahl	سَهْل
for / to / in order to	Le	لِ
as for / according to	ben-nesba le	بِالنَّسْبَةِ لِ
went	Thahab	ذَهَبَ
late	muta'akhi-kher	مُتَأَخِّر
early	mubak-ker / baaker	مُبَكَّر / بَاكِر
because	Le'an-na	لَأَنَّ
bus	Haafela	حَافِلَةٌ
miss / miss out on	faat	فَاتَ
catch up	yalHaq be	يَلْحَقُ بِـ
important	muhem/ma	مُهَمَّ / مَهْمَةٌ
woke up	SaHaa	صَحَا
arrived / reached	waSal	وَصَلَ
when	Aendamaa	عِنْدَمَا
afternoon	baAd aTH-THuhr	بَعْدَ الظَّهْرِ
entered	dakhal	دَخَلَ

Vocabulary:

was	Kaan	كان
uncomfortable / mad	munzaAej	مُنزعج
because of	be-sabab	بسبب
delay	ta'akh-khur	تأخر
forgot	naseya	نسي
already / may / perhaps	qad	قد
came with / brought	jaa'a be	جاء به
wrong	khaTa'	خطأ
bag	Haqiiba	حقيبة
said	qaal	قال
so	leThalek	لذلك
allow	samaHa le / be	سمح ل / به
came back / returned	rajaA	رجع
upset	zaAlaan	زعلان
happened	Hadath	حدث
slept	naam	نام
appointment	maoAed	موعد

الماضي

Grammar usage

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I went	Thahabt(u)	ذَهَبْتُ	أنا 'anaa
We went	Thahabna	ذَهَبْنَا	نحن naHnu
You went (male)	Thahabt(a)	ذَهَبْتَ	أنت 'anta
You went (female)	Thahabte	ذَهَبْتِ	أنتِ 'anti
You went (plural)	Thahabtum	ذَهَبْتُمْ	أنتم 'antum
He went	Thahab(a)	ذَهَبَ	هو hurwa
She went	Thahabat	ذَهَبَتْ	هي heya
They went	Thahab(uu)	ذَهَبُوا	هم hum

al-maaDii

Past tense

You have seen a few verbs in the above story that express the past tense in Arabic. Note that (*al-maadii = past*) in Arabic is conjugated with suffixes. Make it a habit to learn both present and past tense together. The following chart shows the conjugation of the past tense using the verb (**to go**):

كان

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I was	<i>kunt(u)</i>	كُنْتُ	أنا 'anaa
We were	<i>kun-na</i>	كُنَّا	نحن naHnu
You were (male)	<i>kunt(a)</i>	كُنْتَ	أنت 'anta
You were (female)	<i>kunte</i>	كُنْتِ	أنتِ 'anti
You were (plural)	<i>kuntum</i>	كُنْتُمْ	أنتم 'antum
He was	<i>kaan(a)</i>	كَانَ	هو huwa
She was	<i>kaanat</i>	كَانَتْ	هي heya
They were	<i>kaan(uu)</i>	كَانُوا	هم hum

To conjugate the verb (*kaan*) = (he was) remember that it has two stems in conjugation as most of the verbs with the letter (alif) in the middle, they're called (weak verbs). One stem with (alif) for the third persons, and the other one is without (alif)

ما كان

Negation of the past

You have learned to negate the present with (laa). To negate the past tense in formal Arabic use (maa + the verb in past). For example: maa kaan = was not = **مَا ذَهَبَ**, maa Thahaba = didn't go =

(TO SAY)

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I said	<i>qult(u)</i>	قُلْتُ	أنا 'anaa
We said	<i>qulna</i>	قُلْنَا	نحن naHnu
You said (male)	<i>qult(a)</i>	قُلْتَ	أنت 'anta
You said (female)	<i>qulte</i>	قُلْتِ	أنتِ 'anti
You said (plural)	<i>qultum</i>	قُلْتُمْ	أنتم 'antum
He said	<i>qaal(a)</i>	قَالَ	هو huwa
She said	<i>qaalat</i>	قَالَتْ	هي heya
They said	<i>qaal(uu)</i>	قَالُوا	هم hum

TO WAKE UP

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I woke up	<i>SaHawt(u)</i>	صَحَوْتُ	أنا 'anaa
We woke up	<i>SaHawna</i>	صَحَوْنَا	نحن naHnu
You woke up (male)	<i>SaHawt(a)</i>	صَحَوْتَ	أنت 'anta
You woke up (female)	<i>SaHawte</i>	صَحَوْتِ	أنتِ 'anti
You woke up (plural)	<i>SaHawtum</i>	صَحَوْتُمْ	أنتم 'antum
He woke up	<i>SaHa(a)</i>	صَحَا	هو huwa
She woke	<i>SaHat</i>	صَحَتْ	هي heya
They woke up	<i>SaHaw(uu)</i>	صَحَوْا	هم hum

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I arrived			أنا 'anaa
We arrived			نحن naHnu
You arrived (male)			أنت 'anta
You arrived (female)			أنتِ 'anti
You arrived (plural)			أنتم 'antum
He arrived	<i>waSala</i>	وَصَلَ	هو huwa
She arrived			هي heya
They arrived			هم hum

Language Notes

You have seen that a few forms with a certain pronouns in the above charts for ('*anaa*, '*anta*, *huwa*, *hum*) have the suffix written in the transliteration in between brackets, that's to help you to observe that in spoken Arabic most of the Arabic speakers don't pronounce these vowels. For example: they say (*Thahab*) not (*Thahaba*), and (*Thahabt*) not (*Thahabtu*) without the last vowel.

Exercise 1: Conjugate the verbs in the below charts:

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I entered			أنا <i>'anaa</i>
We entered			نَحْنُ <i>naHnu</i>
You entered (male)			أَنْتَ <i>'anta</i>
You entered (female)			أَنْتِ <i>'anti</i>
You entered (plural)			أَنْتُمْ <i>'antum</i>
He entered	<i>dakhala</i>	دَخَلَ	هُوَ <i>huwa</i>
She entered			هِيَ <i>heya</i>
They entered			هُمْ <i>hum</i>

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I delayed			أنا <i>'anaa</i>
We delayed			نَحْنُ <i>naHnu</i>
You delayed (male)			أَنْتَ <i>'anta</i>
You delayed (female)			أَنْتِ <i>'anti</i>
You delayed (plural)			أَنْتُمْ <i>'antum</i>
He delayed	<i>ta'akh-khara</i>	تَأَخَّرَ	هُوَ <i>huwa</i>
She delayed			هِيَ <i>heya</i>
They delayed			هُمْ <i>hum</i>

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I forgot			أنا <i>'anaa</i>
We forgot			نَحْنُ <i>naHnu</i>
You forgot (male)			أَنْتَ <i>'anta</i>
You forgot (female)			أَنْتِ <i>'anti</i>
You forgot (plural)			أَنْتُمْ <i>'antum</i>
He forgot	<i>naseya</i>	نَسِيَ	هُوَ <i>huwa</i>
She forgot			هِيَ <i>heya</i>
They forgot			هُمْ <i>hum</i>

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I came	<i>je'tu</i>	جِئْتُ	أنا 'anaa
We came			نَحْنُ naHnu
You came (male)			أَنْتَ 'anta
You came (female)			أَنْتِ 'anti
You came (plural)			أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He came	<i>jaa'a</i>	جَاءَ	هُوَ huwa
She came			هِيَ heyā
They came			هُمْ hum

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I allowed			أنا 'anaa
We allowed			نَحْنُ naHnu
You allowed (male)			أَنْتَ 'anta
You allowed (female)			أَنْتِ 'anti
You allowed (plural)			أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He allowed	<i>samaHa</i>	سَمَحَ	هُوَ huwa
She allowed			هِيَ heyā
They allowed			هُمْ hum

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I returned			أنا 'anaa
We returned			نَحْنُ naHnu
You returned (male)			أَنْتَ 'anta
You returned (female)			أَنْتِ 'anti
You returned (plural)			أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He returned	<i>rajaAa</i>	رَجَعَ	هُوَ huwa
She returned			هِيَ heyā
They returned			هُمْ hum

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I slept	<i>nemt(u)</i>	نِمْتُ	أنا 'anaa
We slept			نَحْنُ naHnu
You slept (male)			أَنْتَ 'anta
You slept (female)			أَنْتِ 'anti
You slept (plural)			أَنْتُمْ 'antum
He slept	<i>naama</i>	نَامَ	هُوَ huwa
She slept			هِيَ heyā
They slept			هُمْ hum

لِمَ / لِمَاذَا؟

1 - بسبب

lema / lemaTha?

Why?

There are four words / phrases to answer the question, "lema? / lemaTha? = why?" in Arabic, or to give information about a reason, each one of them has its grammatical usage:

لا أحب هذا الشارع بسبب الزحام.

be-sabab

On account of / because of

Example:

2 - على شأن / من شأن

*laa uHebb haTha sh-shaareA **be-sabab** ez-zeHaam.*

I don't like this street because of the crowd.

من فضلك؛ لا تسرع بالسيارة على شأن الأولاد.

Aala sha'n / men sha'n

For the sake of / because of

like the previous word, but used more in spoken language among Arabs, with a lightly fast pronunciation as one word "alashaan" or "menshaan".

Example:

3 - لأن

*men faDlek, laa tusreA bes-say-yaara **Aala sha'n** el-' awlaad.*

Please, don't speed up the car, because of the children.

أذهب إلى المكتب باكراً؛ لأن بيتي قريب جداً.

le'an-na

Because

Example:

4 - لـ

*aTh-hab elaal maktab baakeran, **le'an-na** baytii qarib jed-dan.*

I go to the office early, because my house is so close.

أحبّ أن أشاهد التلفزيون **للتسوية**.

Le

In order to / for

Examples:

أدرّس اللّغات لِأَتَكَلَّم مَعَ النَّاسِ مِنْ حَوْلِ الْعَالَمِ.

uHebb' an ushaahed et-telfeziuum let-tasleya

I like to watch the TV for entertainment.



*'adrus l-lughaat **le-**'atakal-lam maAa n-naas men Hawl al-Aalam.*

I study languages in order to speak to people from all over the world.

Exercise 2: Write down 7 lines about: What did you do yesterday?

Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT TEN

Going for Shopping

التسوق

UNIT TEN

Going for Shopping

Contents

- [A dialogue: Going for Shopping](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Culture notes](#)
- [Colors](#)
- [Grammar usage](#)
- [Exercises](#)

Going for Shopping

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Clerk: Welcome. How can I help you?	C: 'ahlan wa sahlān. 'ayy khedma?	المَوْطَف: أهلاً وسهلاً. أي خدمة؟
Sara: Thanks, I'd like just to have a look first.	M: shukran. 'awadd 'an 'ulqii naTHra aw-walan faqaT.	سارة: شكراً! أود أن ألقى نظرة أولاً فقط.
Clerk: There's a sale on everything in this Dept today.	C: hunaak khuSoumaat Aalaa kul shay' fii haTHaa al-qesm alyawm.	المَوْطَف: هُنَاكَ خَصُومَات عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ فِي هَذَا الْقِسْمِ الْيَوْمِ.
Ten Minutes later		
Sara: Can I try this sweater on, please?	M: hal men al-mumken 'an 'ujar-reb qeyaas haThehe es-sutra men faDlek?	سارة: هل من الممكن أن أجرب فياس هذه السترة من فضلك؟
Clerk: Certainly. The fitting room is over there.	C: bet-ta'kiid. ghurfat alqeyaas hunaak.	المَوْطَف: بالتأكيد. عُرْفَةُ الْقِيَّاسِ هُنَاكَ.

At-tasaw-wuq

Clerk: How is the size?	C: kayf al-maqaas?	المَوْطَف: كَيْفَ الْمَقَّاسُ؟
Sara: I think it's big, have you got a smaller size?	M: 'aDHun 'an-nahaa kabiira, hal Aendak maqaas 'aSghar?	سارة: أَظُنُّ أَنَّهَا كَبِيرَةٌ؛ هَلْ عِنْدَكَ مَقَّاسٌ أَصْغَرُ؟
Clerk: I have. But with different colors!	C: Aendii, wa laken be'alwaan mukhtalefa.	المَوْطَف: عِنْدِي؛ وَلَكِنْ بِأَلْوَانٍ مُخْتَلِفَةٍ.
Sara: Which colors do you have?	M: 'ayy 'alwaan Aendak?	سارة: أَيُّ أَلْوَانٍ عِنْدَكَ؟
Clerk: Blue, black, and white.	C: al'azraq wal'aswad wa al'aabyaD.	المَوْطَف: الْأَزْرَقُ وَالْأَسْوَدُ وَالْأَبْيَضُ.
Sara: I will take the black one.	M: 'akhuTH el'aswad.	سارة: أَخَذْتُ الْأَسْوَدَ.
Clerk: Here you are.	C: tafaD-Dalii.	المَوْطَف: تَقْضَلِي.
Sara: Thank you.	M: shukran.	سارة: شُكْرًا.

Two minutes later

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Shopping	<i>tasaw-wuq</i>	تَسَوَّق
I have a look	<i>ulqii naTHra</i>	أَلْقِي نَظْرَةَ
sale	<i>khaSm</i>	خَصْم
first	<i>aw-walan</i>	أَوَّلًا
everything	<i>kul shay'</i>	كُلُّ شَيْءٍ
sweater	<i>sutra</i>	سُتْرَةَ
dress	<i>fustaan</i>	فُسْتَانَ
Shirt	<i>qamiiS</i>	قَمِيص
suit	<i>badlah</i>	بَدْلَهُ
pants	<i>banTaluun</i>	بَنْطَلُونَ
Scarf	<i>TarHa</i>	طَرَحَهُ
socks	<i>jawaaaareb</i>	جَوَارِب
tie	<i>rabTat Aunuq</i>	رَبَطَهُ عُنُق

Vocabulary:

shoe	HeThaa'	جذاء
certainly	bet-ta'kiid	بالتأكيد
fitting room	ghurfat al-qeyaas	عُرْفَة العِيَّاس
large	waseA	واسع
tight	Day-yeq	صَيِّق
size	almaqaas	المَقَّاسُ
different	mukhtalefa	مُخْتَلِفَة
colors	'alwaan	ألوان
big	kabiir	كَبِير
small	Saghiir	صَغِير
blue	al'azraq	الأزرق
black	al'aswad	الأسود
white	al'abyaD	الأبيض
clothes	malaabes	ملابس



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	<i>sutra</i>	سُتْرَة	1
2	<i>tan-noura</i>	تَنْوْرَة	2
3	<i>tiishiirt</i>	تِي شِيْرْت	3
4	<i>biikiiny</i>	بِيكِيْنِي	4
5	<i>qub-baAa</i>	قُبَّعَة	5
6	<i>kaAb Aalii</i>	كَعْبُ عَالِي	6
7	<i>HeThaam</i>	حِزَام	7
8	<i>Haqiiba</i>	حَقِيْبَة	8
9	<i>HeThaa'</i>	حِذَاء	9
10	<i>naTH-THaara</i>	نَظَّارَة	10
11	<i>khaatam</i>	خَاتَم	11
12	<i>saaAa</i>	سَاعَة	12
13	<i>fustian</i>	فُسْتَان	13
14	<i>serwaal</i>	سِيْرْوَال	14
15	<i>meATaf</i>	مِعْطَف	15
16	<i>fustaan</i>	فُسْتَان	16



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	qamiss	قَمِيص	1
2	qub-baAa	قُبَّة	2
3	tiishiirt	تِي شِيْرْت	3
4	koufey-ya	كُوفِيَّة	4
5	HeThaa'	جِذَاء	5
6	malaabes daakhley-ya	مَلَابِيس دَاخِلِيَّة	6
7	naTH-THaara	نَظَّارَة	7
8	HeThaa' ryaaDii	جِذَاء رِيَاضِي	8
9	sutra	سُتْرَة	9
10	serwaal	سِرْوَال	10
11	meATaf	مِعْطَف	11
12	tiishiirt	تِي شِيْرْت	12
13	kaab	كَاب	13
14	HeThaam	جِزَام	14
15	Haqiiba	حَقِيْبَة	15
16	saaAa	سَاعَة	16

الألوان

Culture notes.

Colors in the Arab world are also used to describe the persons or sometimes the good and the bad events in our life. For example: (*yawm 'aswad*)= (black day) for the bad day, or (*yawm 'abyaD*) = (white day) for the good day.

Colors

Masculine singular	Feminine singular	Color
زهري <i>zahiryyy</i>	زهريه <i>zahrey-ya</i>	Pink
برتقالي <i>Burtuqaalyyy</i>	برتقالية <i>burtuqaaly-ya</i>	Orange
بني <i>bun-nyyy</i>	بنية <i>bun-ney-ya</i>	Brown
فضي <i>feD-Dyyy</i>	فضية <i>feD-Dy-ya</i>	Silver
ذهبي <i>Thahabyyy</i>	ذهبية <i>Thahabey-ya</i>	Gold

al-'alwaan

There are two types of color adjectives in Arabic. The first type consists of adjectives derived from nouns, which have the same form as the adjectives of nationalities.

Here are some common adjectives of this type

Masculine singular	Feminine singular	Color
أبيض <i>'abyaD</i>	بيضاء <i>bayDaa'</i>	White
أسود <i>'aswad</i>	سوداء <i>sawdaa'</i>	Black
أحمر <i>'aHmar</i>	حمراء <i>Hamraa'</i>	Red
أصفر <i>'aSfar</i>	صفراء <i>Safraa'</i>	Yellow
أخضر <i>'akhDar</i>	خضراء <i>khaDraa'</i>	Green
أزرق <i>'azraq</i>	زرقاء <i>zarqaa'</i>	Blue

The second type of color words in a certain form for singular feminine and masculine as well.

الصليب الأحمر <i>1-aS-Saliib al-aHmar</i>	الصليب الأزرق <i>2- aS-Saliib al-azraq</i>	الصليب الأسود <i>3- aS-Saliib al'aswad</i>
--	---	---

Exercise 1: Translate into Arabic:

1- My sister has a blue sweater.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2-I like the green color.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- Omar likes to write with the red pen.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- Kareem is very kind, his heart is white.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- I have three white shirts.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- I have a black car.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- My friend has a yellow car.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَحْيِر	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Gues the meaning in below to learn new words:

a- The Red Cross means.....

الهلال الأحمر	الهلال الأزرق	الهلال الأسود
1- <i>al-helaal al-aHmar</i>	2- <i>al-helaal al-azraq</i>	3- <i>a-helaal al'astwad</i>

b- The Red Crescent means

صفحات زرقاء	صفحات بيضاء	صفحات بُنْيَة
1- <i>SafHaat zarqaa'</i>	2- <i>SafHaat bayDaa'</i>	3- <i>SafHaat bun-ny-ya</i>

c- Yellow pages means

سَمَاء زرقاء	سَمَاء بيضاء	سَمَاء بُنْيَة
1- <i>samaa' zarqaa'</i>	2- <i>samaa' bayDaa'</i>	3- <i>samaa' bun-ny-ya</i>

d- Blue Sky means

English	Transliteration	Arabic
I wear	<i>'albas</i>	أَلْبَسَ
I take off	<i>'akhlaA</i>	أَخْلَعَ
I buy	<i>'aftam</i>	أَشْتَرِي
I look	<i>'anThur</i>	أَنْظُرُ
I'd like	<i>'atwad-d</i>	أُودِّدُ

Exercise 3: Conjugate the following verbs with the subject pronouns in present tense:



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT ELEVEN

Looking for an Apartment

الْبَحْثُ عَنِ شَقَّةِ

UNIT ELEVEN

Looking for an Apartment

Contents

- [Looking for an Apartment](#)

- [Vocabulary](#)

- [Culture notes](#)

- [Grammar usage](#)

[Asking about \(How much & How many\)](#)

- [Exercises](#)

Looking for an Apartment

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: Hello.	A: <i>as-salaamu Alaykum.</i>	آدم: السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ.
The owner: Welcome.	L: <i>wa Aalaykum es-salaam.</i>	المالك: وَعَلَيْكُمْ السَّلَام.
Adam: Excuse me; I'm calling to ask about your ad for the apartment for rent.	A: <i>laʔw samaHt, 'anaa at-taSel le'as'al Aan eAlaankum Aan shaq-qa lil'aejaar!</i>	آدم: لَوْ سَمَّخْتُ؛ أَنَا أَتَصَلِّ لِأَسْأَلُ عَنْ إِعْلَانِكُمْ عَنْ شَقَّةٍ لِلإِيجَار!
The owner: Yes, you are welcome.	L: <i>naAam tafaD-Dal</i>	المالك: نَعَمْ تَفَضَّل.
Adam: Could you give me more information, please?	A: <i>hal men l-mumken 'an 'aArif maAluumaat akthar men faDlek?</i>	آدم: هَلْ مِنْ الْمُمْكِنِ أَنْ أَعْرِفَ مَعْلُومَاتٍ أَكْثَرَ مِنْ فَصْلِكَ؟
The owner: Sure, what would you like to know?	L: <i>'akiid; maThaa turiid 'an taAref?</i>	المالك: أَكِيدُ؛ مَاذَا تُرِيدُ أَنْ تَعْرِفَ؟
Adam: How many rooms does it have?	A: <i>kam ghurfa behaa?</i>	آدم: كَمْ عَرَفَةٌ بِهَا؟
The owner: It has a reception room, a dining room, a small	L: <i>behaa ghurfat esteqbaal, wa ghurfat</i>	المالك: بِهَا عَرَفَةٌ اسْتِيقْبَالٍ، وَعَرَفَةٌ سَفْرَةٌ؛ وَمَطْبَخٌ صَغِيرٌ،

Al-baHth Aan shaq-qa

A dialogue:

kitchen, two bed rooms and a large bath room.	<i>sufra, wa maTbakh Saghiir, wa ghurfayn len-naawm, wa Ham-maam kabiir.</i>	وَعَرَقَتَيْنِ لِلنَّوْمِ؛ وَحَمَّامٍ كَبِيرٍ.
Adam: How much is the rent?	<i>A: wa kam al-'eijaar?</i>	آدم: وَكَمْ الإِيجَارُ؟
The owner: 700 USD per month.	<i>L: 700 sabAumaa'at dollar beash-shahr.</i>	المالك: 700 سَبْعَمِائَةِ دُولَارٍ بِالشَّهْرِ
Adam: That's too much!. Is it furnished?	<i>A: haThaa kathiir!. wa hal heya mafruusha?</i>	آدم: هَذَا كَثِيرٌ! هَلْ هِيَ مَفْرُوشَةٌ؟
The owner: Yes, and it has its own parking (Garage).	<i>L: naAam walahaa mawqaf khaaS (Garage).</i>	المالك: نَعَمْ. وَلَهَا مَوْقِفٌ خَاصٌّ (جَرَّاح).
Adam: When can I see it?	<i>A: mataa yumken 'an 'araahaa?</i>	آدم: مَتَى يُمَكِّنُ أَنْ أَرَاهَا؟
The owner: You can come now. I'm in the office untill the evening.	<i>L: yumkenuk 'an tajii' al'aan, fa'anaa matwjuud bel-maktab elaa l-masaa'.</i>	المالك: يُمَكِّنُكَ أَنْ تَجِيءَ الآنَ؛ فَأَنَا مَوْجُودٌ بِالمَكْتَبِ إِلَى المَسَاءِ.
Adam: I'll come to you in one hour, hopefully.	<i>A: s'ajii' baAd saaAa in shaa' allah.</i>	آدم: سَأَجِي بَعْدَ سَاعَةٍ إِنْ شَاءَ اللهُ .
The owner: You are welcome.	<i>L: 'ahlan wa sahlana.</i>	المالك: أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا

English	Transliteration	Arabic
The owner	<i>almaalek</i>	المالك
advertisement	<i>'eAlaan</i>	إعلان
apartment	<i>shaq-qa</i>	شَقَّة
I know	<i>'aAref</i>	أَعْرَف
information	<i>maAluumaat</i>	مَعْلُومَات
reception room	<i>ghurfat esteqbaal</i>	عُرْفَة اسْتِيقْبَال
dining room	<i>ghurfat sofrā</i>	عُرْفَة سَفْرَة
kitchen	<i>maTbakh</i>	مَطْبَخ
sleeping room	<i>ghurfat an-nawm</i>	عُرْفَة النَّوْم
bath room	<i>Ham-maam</i>	حَمَّام
park	<i>matwqaf</i>	مَوْف
when	<i>mataa</i>	مَتَى

Vocabulary:

God willing / hopefully	<i>'en shaa' allah</i>	إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ
an hour	<i>saaAa</i>	سَاعَة
Private	<i>khaaS</i>	خاص
expensive	<i>ghaalii</i>	غالي
cheap	<i>rakhiiS</i>	رخيص
pound	<i>guneih</i>	جنيه
dirhm	<i>derham</i>	درهم
KD	<i>diinaar</i>	دينار
SR / QR	<i>reyaal</i>	ريال
LS	<i>lira</i>	ليرة



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1	ghurfat nazem	عَرَفَة نَوْم	1
2	ghurfat maAiisha	عَرَفَة مَعِيْشَة	2
3	rudha	رُدْهَة	3
4	maTbakh	مَطْبَخ	4
5	Ham-maam	حَمَام	5
6	mamar	مَمَر	6
7	ghurfat ghasiil	عَرَفَة غَسِيْل	7



N	Transliteration	Arabic	N
1/2/6	kursyy	كُرْسَى	6/2/1
3	meSbaaH	مصباح	3
4	sariir / feraash	سرير / فراش	4
5/8	'adraaj	أدراج	8 / 5
6	kursyy	كُرْسَى	6
7	Taatwelat shaay	طاوِلَة شاي	7
9	khazanat sariir	خزانة سرير	9
10	telfezioun	تلفزيون	10
11	saAa	ساعة	11
18/12	khazaanat malaabes	خزانة ملابس	18/12
13	Soufa	صوفه	13
14	matwqaad / botaghaaz	مَوْقَد / بوتغاز	14
15	khazaanat maTbakh	خزانة مطبخ	15
16	ghas-saala	غَسَّالَة	16
17	maktab	مَكْتَب	17
19	sufra	سَفْرَة	19
20	maktaba	مَكْتَبَة	20

كم

Culture notes

The new society of Arabs still holds close to traditional values and morals. Loyalty to the family has always, and continues to be the top priority of the Arab. Religion is also a main focus in how they live their lives.

One of the most important values in Arabic culture is generosity, which means a lot for Arabs. Even for poor people, as they love to give whatever they have, to be generous as much as possible, and of course not everybody is the same, but that's a general moral all over the Arab's world.

Grammar usage

The most common way to ask (how many? How much?) is to use the interrogative particle "*kam*"

How many rooms are in the flat?	Kam ghorfa fii ash-shaq-qa?	كَمْ عَرَفَةَ فِي الشَّقَّةِ؟
How many days do you work in a week?	Kam yawman taAmal fii al'usbuuA?	كَمْ يَوْمًا تَعْمَلُ فِي الْأَسْبُوعِ؟
How many books you have?	Kam ketaban maAak?	كَمْ كِتَابًا مَعَكَ؟
How many kilos you want?	Kam kiilou turiid?	كَمْ كِيلُو تُرِيدُ؟

How many rooms are in the flat?	Kam ghorfa fii ash-shaq-qa?	كَمْ عَرَفَةَ فِي الشَّقَّةِ؟
How many days do you work in a week?	Kam yawman taAmal fii al'usbuuA?	كَمْ يَوْمًا تَعْمَلُ فِي الْأَسْبُوعِ؟
How many books you have?	Kam ketaban maAak?	كَمْ كِتَابًا مَعَكَ؟
How many kilos you want?	Kam kiilou turiid?	كَمْ كِيلُو تُرِيدُ؟

To ask about the numbers just use *want* "kam" ? and use a singular noun after (*kam*). Marked with the suffix (*an*)(*tanween fat-ha*) in formal Arabic.

Example:

The answer could be as:
ghurfa waaHeda / عَرَفَةَ وَاحِدَةً / one room
khamSAT 'ay-yaam / خَمْسَةَ أَيَّامٍ / five days

To ask about the price you can also use كَمْ "Kam"

How much is this shirt?	Kam thaman/ seAr hathaa al-qamiiS?	كَمْ ثَمَنٌ / سِعْرٌ هَذَا الْقَمِيصِ؟
What is the price of this shirt?		
How much is the rent?	Kam al'iejaar?	كَمْ الْإِجَارُ؟
How much is per kilo?	Kam thaman al-kiiluu?	كَمْ ثَمَنُ الْكِيلُو؟

بِكَمْ

There's a simple way to ask about the price, just use the word (*bekam?*)
 How much is this shirt? *beKam hathaa al-qamiiS?* بِكَمْ هَذَا الْقَمِيصِ؟
 How much is the kilo? *bekam al-kiiluu?* بِكَمْ الْكِيلُو؟
 How much is the book? *bekam al-ketaab?* بِكَمْ الْكِتَابِ which mean = (how much?) for example:



Note that the answer will be preceded by the preposition

بجنيه beguneih = 1 pound

bekam al-kiluu?

بكم الكيلو؟

بثلاثة جنيهات bethalaath guneihaat = 3 pounds

bekam al-ketaab?

بكم الكتاب؟

"Be" if it's number or currency ,

Examples:

1-

2-

3-

4-

5-

6-

7-

8-

Exercise 1: Translate into Arabic:

1- How much is the coffee?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- How many km it is from your work to your home?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- How many days in a week?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- How many months in a year?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- How many weeks in a month?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- How many hours in a day?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- How many rooms in your home?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

8- How many brothers do you have?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Answer the above questions in Arabic after you translate them.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exercise 3: Describe your own house in few lines. Mention how many rooms do you have? How much have you bought / rented it?



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT TWELVE

Weekend Plan

ما برنامجك يوم العطلة؟

UNIT TWELVE

Weekend Plan

Contents

- [A dialogue: Weekend Plan](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Culture Notes](#)
- [Grammar usage: Future tense](#)
- [Exercises](#)

What's your weekend plan?

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: Hello Sara. Adam speaking.	A: marHaban sara. 'anaa adam.	آدم: مَرَحِبًا سَارَة. أَنَا أَدَم.
Sara: Hello Adam. How are you today?	S: 'ahlan 'adam .kayfa Haaluka alyuzom?	سَارَة: أَهْلًا أَدَم. كَيْفَ حَالُكَ الْيَوْمَ؟
Adam: I'm fine. What will you do at the weekend? Do you have any plan yet?	A: bekhayr, alHmdu lilah . maTHa sa-taAmaliin yawm al-AuTla? hal Aendake barnaamaj lahaa baAd?	آدم: بِخَيْرٍ؛ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ: مَاذَا سَتَعْمَلِينَ يَوْمَ الْعِطْلَةِ؟ هَلْ عِنْدَكَ أَيِّ بَرْنَامَج لَهَا بَعْدَ؟
Sarah : Not yet. Do you and our colleagues have any plans?	S: 'elaa al'aan laa. hal Aendakum shay' 'anta wa z-zumalaa'?	سَارَة: إِلَى الْآنَ: لَا؛ هَلْ عِنْدَكُمْ شَيْءٌ أَنْتَ وَالزُّمَلَاءَ؟
Adam: We'll go to the theatre on Friday evening, there's a show	A: sanaTlhab lilmasraH yawm aljumAa fii	آدم: سَتَذْهَبُ لِلْمَسْرَحِ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ فِي الْمَسَاءِ؛ هُنَاكَ عَرْضٌ لِمَسْرَحِيَّةٍ يَغْمَالِيُونَ؟

maa barnaamajuka yawm al-AuTla?

Read the Dialogue below as Adam has phoned Sara and her sister, asking them about their plan for the weekend.

for Pygmalion play? Then we'll go to have dinner? What is your opinion?	<i>almasaa, hunaaak AarD lemasraHeyat begmalion? wa baAdahaa naTh-hab lelAashaa'?</i> <i>maa ra'yuke?</i>	وبعدھا سوّف نذهب للغشاء؟ ما رأيك؟
Sarah: I think it is a good idea.	<i>S: 'aTHun 'an-nahaa fekra jay-yeda.</i>	سارة: أظنّ أنها فكرة جيّدة.
Adam: Alright. We'll call you on Thursday evening to set the time/ hopefully (God willing).	<i>A: Hasanan. sawfa nat- taSel beke masaa' al- khamiis 'en shaa' Allah lenuHad-ded al-mawAed.</i>	آدم: حسناً؛ سوّف نتصل بكم مساء الخميس إن شاء الله؛ لتحدّد الموعد.
Sara: Thanks for your call Adam. Good-bye.	<i>S: shukran Alaa telefuunak ya 'adam. fii 'amaan ellah.</i>	سارة: شكراً على تليفونك يا آدم؛ في أمان الله.
Adam: Good-bye.	<i>A: maAa as-salaama.</i>	آدم: مع السلامة.
English	Transliteration	Arabic
weekend	<i>Autla</i>	عطلة
weekend	<i>ijaaza</i>	إجازة
plan	<i>khuTa</i>	خطه
program	<i>barnaamaaj</i>	برنامج
opinion	<i>ra'y</i>	رأي
theatre	<i>masraH</i>	مسرح
cinema	<i>Siinema</i>	سينما
opera	<i>al-opera</i>	الأوبرا
park / garden	<i>Hadiiqa</i>	حديقة
picnic	<i>nuzha</i>	نزهة
beach	<i>shaaTe'</i>	شاطيء
play	<i>Amal/ masraHy-ya</i>	عمل/ مسرحية
he sets the time	<i>yuHad-ded alwaqt</i>	يُحدّد الوقت
tomorrow	<i>ghadan-bukrah</i>	عداً-بكرة
later	<i>fii maa baAd-laHeqan</i>	فيما بعد- لاحقاً

Vocabulary:

إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ

Culture Notes

It is very common in Arabic culture to say the phrase (*in shaa' Allah* — إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ) when you talk about something that you are going to do in the future, and it is almost like when you say (hopefully) in English.

Grammar usage

The Future Tense.

Expressing the future tense in the Arabic language very simple, as you can just add the prefix سَوْفَ (sa) or the word سَوْفَا (sawfa) before the verb in present tense which means (will) You can use سَوْفَ

I will go to the beach tomorrow

سَأَذْهَبُ إِلَى الشَّاطِئِ غَدًا

sa-'aThhab elaa ash-shaaTe' ghadan

Next Friday we will go to the cinema

سَوْفَ نَذْهَبُ لِلسَّيِّمَةِ الْجُمُعَةِ الْقَادِمَةِ

sawfa naTh-hab les-siinemaa
aljumuaAa alqaadema

I will study Arabic next month

سَوْفَ أَذْرُسُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ الشَّهْرَ الْقَادِمَ

sawfa 'adrus al-Aaraby-ya ash-shahr
al-qaadem (sawfa)

(sa) for the near future and
for the far future:

لَنْ

Negating the future tense

For negating the future tense, you can use just the particle (lan) "

I will not travel on the vacation

لَنْ أَسَافِرَ فِي الْعُطْلَةِ

lan usaafer fii elAuTla

I will not eat sushi after now

لَنْ أَكُلَ سُوشِي بَعْدَ الْآنَ

lan 'aakul suushii baAd al'aan"=(will not) before the present tense.

For example:

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I'll call			أنا
We'll call			نحن
You'll call (male)			أنت
You'll call (female)			أنت
You'll call (plural)			أنتم
He'll call	<i>sa-yat-taSel</i>	سيصل	هو
She'll call			هي
They'll call			هم

Exercise 1: Conjugate the below verbs in the future tense:

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I'll be			أنا
We'll be			نحن
You'll be (male)			أنت
You'll be (female)			أنت
You'll be (plural)			أنتم
He'll be	<i>sa-yakuun</i>	سيكون	هو
She'll be			هي
They'll be			هم

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I'll determine			أنا
We'll determine			نحن
You'll determine (male)			أنت
You'll determine (female)			أنت
You'll determine (plural)			أنتم
He'll determine	<i>sa-yuHad-ded</i>	سيحدد	هو
She'll determine			هي
They'll determine			هم

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I'll go			أنا
We'll go			نحن
You'll go (male)			أنت
You'll go (female)			أنت
You'll go (plural)			أنتم
He'll go	<i>sa-yaTh-hab</i>	سيذهب	هو
She'll go			هي
They'll go			هم

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I'll see			أنا
We'll see			نَحْنُ
You'll see (male)			أَنْتَ
You'll see (female)			أَنْتِ
You'll see (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He'll see	<i>sa-yashouf</i>	سَيَشْفُوف	هُوَ
She'll see			هِيَ
They'll see			هُمْ

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I'll come			أنا
We'll come			نَحْنُ
You'll come (male)			أَنْتَ
You'll come (female)			أَنْتِ
You'll come (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He'll come	<i>sa-yajii'</i>	سَيَجِيءُ	هُوَ
She'll come			هِيَ
They'll come			هُمْ

English	Transliteration	Arabic
I wear	<i>'albas</i>	أَلْبَسَ
I take off	<i>'akhlaA</i>	أَخْلَعَ
I buy	<i>'afham</i>	أَشْتَرِي
I look	<i>'anThur</i>	أَنْظُرُ
I like	<i>'uHebb</i>	أُحِبُّ



Exercise 2: Translate into Arabic to make a story:

1- I have a vacation next month.

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَحْيَى	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- I have a program for my vacation.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- I want to go to the beach.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- I will go with my friend John.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- I will call him this evening to set the time.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- We'll go to the Cinema in the evening.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- But we will not go for dinner.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيِّرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

8- Because we will eat at home.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

9- I think it is a good idea.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

10- I will travel next vacation.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT THIRTEEN

Making an Appointment

تَحْدِيدُ مَوْعِدٍ

UNIT THIRTEEN

Making an Appointment

Contents

- [Making an Appointment](#)

- [Vocabulary](#)

- [Culture notes](#)

- [Grammar usage](#)

[Negation of the nominal sentence](#)

- [Exercises](#)

Making an Appointment

Ta-Hdiid mawAed

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Receptionist: Hello, Dr. Khaled's Clinic here.	M: 'ahlan wasahlan, hunaa Aeyaadat ad-duktur Khaled.	المُوظَّف: أهلاً وسهلاً؛ هنا عيادة الدكتور خالد.
Adam: Hello, this is Adam. I want to make an appointment with Dr. Khaled.	A: 'ahlan, 'anaa 'adam, uriid 'an uHad-ded mawAed maAa duktur Khalid.	آدم: أهلاً؛ أنا آدم؛ أريد أن أحدد موعد مع دكتور خالد.
Receptionist: May I know the reason for the consulting?	M: hal men al-mumken 'an 'aAref sabab alesteshaara?	المُوظَّف: هل من الممكن أن أعرف سبب الاستشارة؟
Adam: I have a sore throat.	A: Aendii eltehaab fii l-Halq.	آدم: عندي التهاب في الحلق.
Receptionist: Since when?	M: munThu mataa?	المُوظَّف: منذ متى؟
Adam: About three days.	A: munThu thalaathat 'ay-yaam.	آدم: منذ ثلاثة أيام.
Receptionist: Is it suitable for you at 11:00 am tomorrow?	M: hal yunaasebuka ghadan. as-saaAa 11:00 SabaaHan?	المُوظَّف: هل يناسبك غداً الساعة 11:00 ص؟

A dialogue:

Adam: Unfortunately, I don't have time, what about 11:30 am?	A: lel'asaf,laysa Aendii waqt,maThaa Aan 11:30 SabaaHan?	آدم: للأسف ليس عندي وقت، ماذا عن 11:30 ص؟
Receptionist: Is 11:30 am good?	M: mumken as-saAa 11:30 SabaaHan hal haThaa jay-yed?	الموظف: ممكن الساعة 11:30 صباحاً؛ هل هذا جيد؟
Adam: Yes. That's good.	A: naAam, haTHaa jay-yed.	آدم: نعم؛ هذا جيد.
Receptionist: Okay, see you tomorrow hopefully.	M: Hasanan, naraaka ghadan 'en shaa' allah.	المُوظَّف: حسناً؛ نراك غداً إن شاء الله.
Adam: Thank you, bye.	A: shukran; maAa s-salaama.	آدم: شكراً؛ مع السلامة.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
receptionist	<i>mwaTH-THaf alesteqbaal</i>	مَوْطَفِ الاسْتِقْبَالِ
clinic	<i>Aeyaadah</i>	عِيَادَة
here	<i>hunaa</i>	هُنَا
appointment	<i>mawAed</i>	مَوْعِد
reason	<i>sabab</i>	سَبَب
suitable	<i>munaaseb</i>	مُنَاسِب
To suit	<i>yunaaseb</i>	يُنَاسِب
consulting	<i>'estshaara</i>	إِسْتِشَارَة
Sore throat	<i>eltehaab Halq</i>	إِلْتِهَابِ حَلَق
unfortunately	<i>lel'asaf</i>	لِلْأَسَفِ
okay	<i>Hasanan</i>	حَسَنًا
since	<i>munThu</i>	مُنْذُ
to determine / set a time	<i>uHad-ded</i>	أَحَدَّد
to see	<i>'araa</i>	أَرَى
not	<i>laysa</i>	لَيْسَ

Vocabulary:

أَسْتَطِيعُ

Culture notes

There is a verb in Arabic which means (I can) = ('astaTiiA مُمْكِن). But It's very common in the Arab

1. Ahmad yaAmal muwaTH-THaf
esteqbaal

1. أحمد يعمل موظف استقبال

2. munTHu mataa taskun hunaa?

2. منذ متى تسكن هنا؟

3. uriid 'an uHad-ded maAwAed
maAa al-mudiiir.

3. أريد أن أحدد موعد مع المدير.

4. 'ana taAbaan munThu
thalaathat 'ay-yaam.

4. أنا تعب من ثلاث أيام.

5. maa sabab alesteshara?

5. ما سبب الاستشارة؟

world to use the word (*mumken*)
which means (possible) instead of saying (can I / may I / is it possible?).

Exercise 1: Translate into Arabic:

1. May I make an appointment with the manager Mr Waliid please?

B

A

bekhayr	يخبر	Aalaykum	عليكم
an-nuur	النور	SabaaH	صباح
al-khayr	الخير	'anaa	أنا
Aalaykum	عليكم	al-Hamdu	الحمد
as-salaamu	السلام	SabaaH	صباح
al-Haal	الحال	Kayf?	كيف؟
Aala khayr	على خير	as-salaamu	السلام
as-salaama	السلامة	layla	ليلة
saAiida	سعيدة	maAa	مع
lillah	لله	tusbeH	تصبح

2. Is it possible to come tomorrow at 09:00 am?

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3. Is it suitable for you to come in the evening?

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4. I have sore throat since two days.

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	' <i>anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5. May I know why you want to take the appointment?

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	' <i>anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6. I want to set a time to study Arabic everyday in the evening.

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرُ	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالُ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرٍ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Translate the following into English:

لَيْسَ

Grammar usage

Negation of the nominal sentence

We have learned the nominal sentence (the sentence which starts with a noun) in previous units. To negate the nominal sentence, you can use the word (*laysa* =

English	Transliteration	Arabic
I am not sure about the working schedule.	<i>Lastu mota'akeddan men jadwal matwaaAiid al-Aamal</i>	لَيْسَتْ مُتَأَكِّدًا مِنْ جَدْوَلِ مَوَاعِيدِ الْعَمَلِ.
The doctor is not in the clinic right now.	<i>Ad-duktur laysa fii al-Aeyaadah, al'an</i>	الدُّكْتُورُ لَيْسَ فِي العِيَادَةِ الآنَ.
I don't have time	<i>Laysa Aendii waqt.</i>	(لَيْسَ عِنْدِي وَقْت.)

which is conjugated as how the verbs in past tense look. Also it's considered an uncompleted verb in Arabic. For example:

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Subject
I`am not	<i>lastu</i>	لَسْتُ	أنا
We are not	<i>lasnaa</i>	لَسْنَا	نحن
You(m) are not	<i>lasta</i>	لَسْتَ	أنت
You(f) are not	<i>lasti</i>	لَسْتِ	أنتِ
You(p)are not	<i>lastum</i>	لَسْتُمْ	أنتم
He is not	<i>laysa</i>	لَيْسَ	هو
She is not	<i>laysat</i>	لَيْسَتْ	هي
They are not	<i>laysuu</i>	لَيْسُوا	هم

The following chart shows "laysa" conjugated with all the subject pronouns as the past tense conjugation:

English	Transliteration	Arabic
I am not an engineer	<i>lastu mohandesa</i>	لَسْتُ مَهْنَدِسَةً
We are not students.	<i>lasnaa Taalebaat</i>	لَسْنَا طَالِبَات
She is not a teacher	<i>laysat mudar-resa</i>	لَيْسَتْ مُدَرِّسَةً
Eiffel tower is not in Germany	<i>burj 'eiifel laysa fii 'almaanyaa</i>	بُرْج اَيْفَل لَيْسَ فِي أَلْمَانِيَا

Examples:

(لَسْتُ - لَيْسَتْ - لَيْسُوا)	1- سارة لَهَا أُخْت .
<i>lasta – laysat – laysuu</i>	Sara lahaa ukht.
(لَسْنَا - لَيْسَتْ - لَسْتُ)	2- أنا مِصْرِيَّة ، أَنَا أَمْرِيكِيَّة .
<i>lasnaa – laysat - lastu</i>	'anaa meSry-ya, 'anaa amriiky-ya.
(لَيْسَ - لَسْتُ - لَسْتُمْ)	3- عِنْدِي وَقْت .
<i>laysa – lastu - lastum</i>	.....Aendii waqt.
(لَيْسُوا - لَسْتُ - لَسْتُمْ)	4- أَدَم وَسَارَةَ مِنْ أَمْرِيكَا
<i>laysuu – lasti - lastum</i>	'adam wa sara men 'amriika.
(لَسْتُمْ - لَيْسَ - لَسْنَا)	5- كَرِيم مَعَهُ سَيَّارَةَ .
<i>lastum – laysa - lasnaa</i>	Kariim maAahu say-yaara.

Exercise 3: Choose the right form of (*laysa*):

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I see	'araa	أَرَى	أَنَا
We see			نَحْنُ
You see (male)			أَنْتَ
You see (female)			أَنْتِ
You see (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He sees	yaraa	يَرَى	هُوَ
She sees			هِيَ
They see			هُمْ

Exercise 4: Complete conjugating the below verbs in the present tense:

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I know	'aAref	أَعْرِفُ	أَنَا
We know			نَحْنُ
You know (male)			أَنْتَ
You know (female)			أَنْتِ
You know (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He knows	yaAref	يَعْرِفُ	هُوَ
She knows			هِيَ
They know			هُمْ

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I want	'auriid	أُرِيدُ	أَنَا
We want			نَحْنُ
You want (male)			أَنْتَ
You want (female)			أَنْتِ
You want (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He wants	yuriid	يُرِيدُ	هُوَ
She wants			هِيَ
They want			هُمْ



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT FOURTEEN

At the Clinic

في العيادة

UNIT FOURTEEN

At the Clinic

Contents

- [At the Clinic](#)

- [Vocabulary](#)

- [Culture Notes](#)

- [Grammar Usage](#)

[Find more about \(Broken plural\)](#)

- [Exercises](#)

At the Clinic

Fii l-Aeyaadah

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Dr. Khaled: Good morning Adam. How do you feel?	<i>D: SabaaH el-khayr ya 'adam, kayf tashAur?</i>	د. خالد: صباح الخير يا آدم! كيف تشعر؟
Adam: I have a bad sore throat.	<i>A: Aendii eltehaab shadiid fii l-Halq!</i>	آدم: عندي التهاب شديد في الحلق!
Dr. Khaled: When did it start?	<i>D: munThu mataa bada'?</i>	د. خالد: منذ متى بدأ؟
Adam: Three days ago.	<i>A: munThu thalaathat 'ay-yaam.</i>	آدم: منذ ثلاثة أيام.
Dr. Khaled: Do you have any other symptoms?	<i>D: Hal Aendak 'ayy 'aAraaD ukhrraa?</i>	د. خالد: هل عندك أي أعراض أخرى؟
Adam: I have a slight fever.	<i>A: 'ashAur beHum-maa Tafiifa.</i>	آدم: أشعر بحمى طفيفة.
Dr. Khaled: Okay. I want to have a look at your throat.	<i>D: Tay-yeb ureed 'an ulqii naTHra Aalaa Halqek.</i>	د. خالد: طيب! أريد أن ألقى نظرة على حلقك.
Adam: Yes please.	<i>A: tafaD-Dal.</i>	آدم: تفضل.

A dialogue:

Dr. Khaled: I'm going to write to you a prescription of an antibiotic.	<i>D: Sa'aktub lak waSfat muDaad Hayawii.</i>	د. خالد: سأكتب لك وصفة مضاد حيوي.
Adam: How many times do I have to take this?	<i>A: wakam mar-ra men l-laazem 'an 'akhuTh haThaa alAelaaj?</i>	آدم: وكم مرة من اللازم أن أخذ هذا العلاج؟
Dr. Khaled: Take a pill three times a day for seven days. You'll probably feel better in a couple of days hopefully.	<i>D: qurS; thalaath mar-raat fii alyatom, lemud-dat 'asbuuA. sawfa tashAur betaHas-sun khelal yawmayn 'en shaa' allah.</i>	د. خالد: قرص؛ ثلاث مرات في اليوم؛ لمدة أسبوع؛ سوف تشعر يتحسن خلال يومين إن شاء الله.
Adam: Thanks a lot, Dr. Khaled.	<i>A: shukran jaziilan ya doktor khaled.</i>	آدم: شكراً جزيلاً يا دكتور خالد.
English	Transliteration	Arabic
hospital	<i>mustashfaa</i>	مُسْتَشْفَى
I feel	<i>'ashAur</i>	أشعر
antibiotic	<i>muDaadd Hayawii</i>	مُضَادَّ حَيَوِيّ
light	<i>khafiif / a</i>	خَفِيف / هـ
fever	<i>Hum-maa</i>	حَمَّى
cure	<i>Aelaaj</i>	عِلَاج
pill / tablet	<i>qurS</i>	قُرْص
getting better	<i>taHas-sun</i>	تَحَسَّن
Time (for counting)	<i>mar-ra</i>	مَرَّة
times	<i>mar-raat</i>	مَرَات
symptoms	<i>'aAraaD</i>	أَعْرَاض

Vocabulary:

strong	shadiid/a	شَدِيد / َة
slight	Taftif/a	طَفِيف / َة
for a period	le-mud-da	لِمُدَّة
It's necessary to during	men al-laazem 'an khelaal	من اللازم أن خلال
To have a look prescription	ulqii naTHra waSfa	أَلْعَى نَظْرَةَ وَصَفَةَ
other / another	ukhraa	أُخْرَى
pain	'alam	أَلَمٌ



English	Transliteration	Arabic
head	<i>raa's</i>	رَأْس
face	<i>wajh</i>	وَجْه
eye (Eyes)	<i>Ain (Ainaan)</i>	عَيْن (عَيْنَان)
nose	<i>'anf</i>	أَنْف
ear (Ears)	<i>uThun (uThunaan)</i>	أُذُن (أُذُنَان)
mouth	<i>fam</i>	فَم
cheek (Cheeks)	<i>khad (khuduud)</i>	خَد (خُدُود)
chin	<i>Thaqn</i>	ذَقْن
hair	<i>shaAr</i>	شَعْر
neck	<i>raqaba</i>	رَقَبَة
tooth (Teeth)	<i>sen ('asnaan)</i>	سِن (أَسْنَان)
shoulder (Shoulders)	<i>katef ('aktaaf)</i>	كَيْف (أَكْتَأَف)

Parts of the Body

arm (Arms)	<i>TheraaA(TheraaAaan)</i>	ذِرَاع (ذِرَاعَان)
hand (Hands)	<i>yad (yadaan)</i>	يَد (يَدَان)
finger (Fingers)	<i>'eSbaA ('aSaabeA)</i>	إَصْبَع (أَصَابِع)
chest	<i>Sadr</i>	صَدْر
elbow	<i>kuuA</i>	كُوع
heart	<i>qalb</i>	قَلْب
belly	<i>baTn</i>	بَطْن
stomach	<i>maAeda</i>	مَعْدَة
leg (Legs)	<i>rejl (arjul)</i>	رَجْل (أَرْجُل)
knee (Knees)	<i>rukba (rukbatain)</i>	رُكْبَة (رُكْبَتَيْن)
foot (Feet)	<i>qadam (aqdaam)</i>	قَدَم (أَقْدَام)
back	<i>THahr</i>	ظَهْر

يشوف yashuuf

To look at

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I look at	'ashuuf	أشوف	أنا
We look at	nashuuf	نشوف	نحن
You look at (male)	tashuuf	تشوف	أنت
You look at (female)	tashuufii / tashuufiin	تشوفى / تشوفين	أنت
You look at (plural)	tashuufuu / tashuufuun	تشوفوا / تشوفون	أنتم
He looks at	yashuuf	يشوف	هو
She looks at	tashuuf	تشوف	هي
They look at	tashuufuu / yashuufuun	يشوفوا / يشوفون	هم

Culture Notes

Useful Verbs

Practice learning & conjugating the new verbs below. As its considered *classical or old Arabic*, however most of them are commonly used in spoken Arabic.

هَلْ مِنَ الْمُمْكِنِ أَنْ أَشُوفَ الشَّقَّةَ قَبْلَ الْإِيجَارِ؟

Example:

يارو ح yaruuh

To go

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I go	'aruuh	أروح	أنا
We go	naruuh	نروح	نحن
You go (male)	taruuh	تروح	أنت
You go (female)	taruuhii / taruuhiin	تروحي / تروحين	أنت
You go (plural)	taruuhuu / taruuhuun	تروحوا / تروحون	أنتم
He goes	yaruuh	يروح	هو
She goes	taruuh	تروح	هي
They go	yaruuhuu / yaruuhuun	يروحوا / يروحون	هم

hal men al-mumken 'an 'ashuuf ash-shaq-qa qabl al-'eiijaar?

Can I see the apartment before renting?

English	Transliteration	Arabic
head (heads)	<i>raa's (ru'auus)</i>	رَأْس (رُءُوس)
eye (eyes)	<i>Ain (Auyuun)</i>	عَيْن (عَيُون)
nose (noses)	<i>'anf ('anuuf)</i>	أَنْف (أَنْوَف)
cheek (Cheeks)	<i>khad (khuduud)</i>	خَد (خُدُود)
chin (chins)	<i>Thaqn (Thuquun)</i>	ذَقْن (ذَقُون)
heart (hearts)	<i>qalb (quluub)</i>	قَلْب (قَلُوب)
belly (bellies)	<i>baTn (buTuun)</i>	بَطْن (بَطُون)
chest (chests / breasts)	<i>Sadr (Suduur)</i>	صَدْر (صُدُور)
<u>Another pattern</u>		
tooth (teeth)	<i>sen ('asnaan)</i>	سِن (أَسْنَان)
shoulder (Shoulders)	<i>katef ('aktaaf)</i>	كَيْف (أَكْتِاف)
hand (Hands)	<i>yad ('ayaad)</i>	يَد (أَيَاد)
finger (Fingers)	<i>'eSbaA ('aSaabeA)</i>	إَصْبَع (أَصَابِع)
foot (Feet)	<i>qadam ('aqdaam)</i>	قَدَم (أَقْدَام)
elbow	<i>kuuA ('akwaaA)</i>	كُوع (أَكْوَاع)

Grammar Usage

Broken plural

Few Arabic nouns cannot form the plural using the (feminine or masculine plural) which we have learned so far. Here we have some more patterns for the broken plural as we said before, that we will keep learning them one by one or two by two as we go.

The next chart shows some of the words in the singular form then with the broken plural form, so you can observe the changes.

1- men al-laazem 'an aruuH le-doctuur.

1. من اللازم أن أروح ليدكتور.

2- 'ayna Aeyaaadat al'snaan men faDlek?

2- أين عيادة الأسنان من فضلك؟

3- kam mar-ra men al-laazem 'an 'akhuuth alAelaaj?

3- كم مرة من اللازم أن أخذ العلاج؟

4- katab lli ad-ductuur waSfat muDaad Hayawii.

4- كتب لي الدكتور وصفة مُضاد حيوي.

5- 'ashAur be'alam fii ra'sii wa Aynii.

5- أشعر بالألم في رأسي وعيني.

Exercise 1: Translate into Arabic:

1. I have a slight fever, I have to go to see the doctor tomorrow.

B

A

bekhayr	يخبر	Aalaykum	عليكم
an-nuur	النور	SabaaH	صباح
al-khayr	الخير	'anaa	أنا
Aalaykum	عليكم	al-Hamdu	الحمد
as-salaamu	السلام	SabaaH	صباح
al-Haal	الحال	Kayf?	كيف؟
Aala khayr	على خير	as-salaamu	السلام
as-salaama	السلامة	layla	ليلة
saAiida	سعيدة	maAa	مع
lillah	لله	tusbeH	تصبح

2. I'm taking a pill three times a day for seven days, hopefully I will be better.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3. I don't know how many times do I have to take this tablet?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4. I feel that I'm having a fever symptoms?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5. I feel pain in my head, I have to take an aspirin tablet.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6. I feel pain in my stomach, and my back.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7. It's necessary to take the medicine.

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

Exercise 2: Translate into English:

	<u>A</u>			<u>B</u>	
qurS		قُرْص		'awlaad	أَوْلَاد
'alam		أَلْم		'aAmaal	أَعْمَال
walad		وَلَدٌ		'abnaa'	أَبْنَاء
Aamal		عَمَلٌ		'aalaam	أَلَام
shughl		شُغْل		'aqraaS	أَقْرَاص
ebn		إِبْن		'ashghaal	أَشْغَال
qalam		قَلَم		'alwaan	أَلْوَان
lawn		لَوْن		'aqlaam	أَقْلَام

Exercise 3: Match each singular in (A) with its plural in (B) to figure out and learn new plurals:

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I start	'abda'	أَبْدَأَ	أَنَا
We start			نَحْنُ
You start (male)			أَنْتَ
You start (female)			أَنْتِ
You start (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He starts	yabda'	يَبْدَأُ	هُوَ
She starts			هِيَ
They start			هُمْ

Exercise 4: Complete the conjugation of the below verb in the present tense:



Go online and register yourself to download your audio files and more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

UNIT FIFTEEN

At the Bank

في المَصْرَفِ

UNIT FIFTEEN

At the Bank

Contents

- [At the Bank](#)
- [Vocabulary](#)
- [Culture notes](#)
- [Grammar Usage](#)
- [Exercises](#)

At the Bank

fii l-maSraf

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Sami: Welcome. I'm Sami, from customer service. How can I help you?	S: <i>marhaban, 'anaa samii, men khedmat alAumalaa'. 'ay musaaAda?</i>	سامي: مَرَحِبًا؛ أَنَا سَامِي؛ مِمن خِدْمَة العَمَلَاء؛ أَي مَسَاعَدَة؟
Adam: Hi. My name is Adam Jacob. I want to open an account at your bank.	A: <i>'ahlan, esmii 'adam yaquub. uriid 'an aftaH Hesaab Aendakum.</i>	أَدَم: أَهْلًا؛ إِسْمِي أَدَم يَعْقُوب؛ أُرِيد أَن أَفْتَح حِسَاب عِنْدَكُم.
Sami: Saving account or current account?	S: <i>Hesaab tawfiir 'am Hesaab jaarii?</i>	سَامِي: حِسَاب تَوْفِير أَمْ حِسَاب جَارِي؟
Adam: Saving account.	A: <i>Hesaab tawfiir</i>	أَدَم: حِسَاب تَوْفِير
Sami: How much would you like to deposit today?	S: <i>kam tuHeb 'an tuudeA alyawm fii el-Hesaab?</i>	سامي: كَمْ تَحِب أَن تُودِع اليَوْم فِي الحِسَاب؟
Adam: I have 900 USD in cash.	A: <i>maAii 900 dollar amriiky y naqdan.</i>	أَدَم: مَعِي 900 دُولَار أَمْرِيكِي نَقْدًا.
Sami: I'll get you an	S: <i>safofa uHDer laka</i>	سامي: سَتَوْف أَخْضِر لَكَ

A dialogue:

application form to fill out.	<i>estmaraa; le-tamlaa' al-bayaanaat</i>	إِسْتِمَارَة؛ لِيَمْلَأَ الْبَيَانَات.
Adam: These are my details.	<i>A: haThehe bayaanaatii, tafaD-Dal.</i>	آدَم: هَذِهِ بَيَانَاتِي؛ تَفَضَّل.
Sami: You'll receive your ATM card within one week. You can use it for withdrawals, deposits, and payment of bills.	<i>S: sawfa tastalem beTaaqat aS-Sarf el'aalii khelaal usbuuA, yumkenak behaa as-saHb wal-'eiidaaA,wadafA al-fwaatiir.</i>	سامي: سَتَوْف تَسْتَلِم بِطَاقَةَ الصَّرْفِ الْأَلِيِّ خِلَالَ أُسْبُوعٍ؛ يُمْكِنُكَ بِهَا السَّحْبَ، وَالْإِيدَاعَ، وَدَفْعَ الْفَوَاتِيرِ
Adam: Is there a service fee for that?	<i>A: hal hunaaq maSrufaat lehaThehe el-khedma?</i>	آدَم: هَلْ هُنَاكَ مَصْرُوفَاتٌ لِهَذِهِ الْخِدْمَةِ؟
Sami: No. only 3 USD a month for the On-Line banking service.	<i>S: laa, faqaT 3 dolaraat fii ash-shahr lekhdmat al-bank el-alelktrooni Aalaa al'entarnet.</i>	سامي: لَا؛ فَقَط 3 دُولَارَات فِي الشَّهْرِ لِخِدْمَةِ الْبَنْكِ الْأَلِكْتُرُونِيِّ عَلَى الْإِنْتَرْنِتِ
Adam: Thanks a lot Mr. Sami.	<i>A: shukran jaziilan ustaaTh samii</i>	آدَم: شُكْرًا جَزِيلًا أُسْتَاذَ سَامِي.
Sami: You're quite welcome Mr. Adam.	<i>S: shar-raft ya ustaaTh 'adam.</i>	سامي: شَرَّفْتَ يَا أُسْتَاذَ آدَم.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Customer service.	<i>khedmat alAumalaa'</i>	خِدْمَةُ الْعَمَلَاءِ
an account	<i>Hesaab</i>	حِسَاب
saving account	<i>Hesaab tafwiir</i>	حِسَاب تَوْفِير
current account	<i>Hesaab jaarii</i>	حِسَاب جَارِي
details.	<i>bayaanaat</i>	بَيَانَات
He receives	<i>yastalem</i>	يَسْتَلِم
an application	<i>estemaara</i>	إِسْتِمَارَة
withdrawals	<i>as-saHb</i>	السَّحْب
deposits	<i>al-'eiidaaA</i>	الْإِيدَاع
transfer	<i>at-taHwiil</i>	التَّحْوِيل
paying	<i>dafA</i>	دَفَع
bill/ bills	<i>fatuura / fatwaatiir</i>	فَاتُورَة / فَوَاتِير
cash	<i>naqdan</i>	نَقْدًا
He opens	<i>yafthaH</i>	يَفْتَح
fees/ expenses	<i>maSruufaaf</i>	مَصْرُوفَات
cashier	<i>Sar-raaf</i>	صَرَّاف
ATM	<i>Sar-raaf 'aalyy</i>	صَرَّاف أَلِي

Vocabulary:

English	Transliteration	Arabic
credit	<i>e'temaan</i>	إِئْتِمَان
credit card	<i>betaaqat e'temaan</i>	يَطَاقَة إِئْتِمَان
check	<i>shiik</i>	شِيك
loan / loans	<i>qarD</i>	قَرَض / قُرُوض
teller	<i>Sar-raaf</i>	صَرَّاف
accountant	<i>muHaaseb</i>	مُحَاسِب
director	<i>mudiir</i>	مُدِير
tax / taxes	<i>Dariiba / Daraa'eb</i>	صَرِيْبَة / صَرَايِبُ
interest	<i>faa'eda</i>	فَائِدَة
finance	<i>maal</i>	مَال
financial	<i>maalii /a</i>	مَالِي / ه
financing	<i>tamtwiil</i>	تَمْوِيل
mortgage	<i>rahn</i>	رَهْن
currency	<i>Aumla</i>	عَمَلَة
wallet	<i>maHfaTHa</i>	مَحْفَظَة

Other Useful Vocabulary

(يَمكُنْكَ)

Culture notes

Most muslims around Arab countries and in non Arab countries like to deal with banks follow the (sharia law banking system), (sharia) is an Arabic word means (way or path), Shari'a deals with many topics addressed by secular law.

Grammar Usage

You have seen the employee saying to Adam (*yumkenuka*) الممكِن أن من which literally means (it is possible to you), as you see the verb is in the form of (he) as there is no pronoun for (it) in Arabic, that's why it's considered (he or she). Also you have learned how to use the same word but as (*men*)



almumken 'an)

phrases are used in spoken Arabic instead of (can you? / or you can).

which means (it's possible to), both of the

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I bring	'auHDer	أَحْضِر	أَنَا
We bring			نَحْنُ
You bring (male)			أَنْتَ
You bring (female)			أَنْتِ
You bring (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He brings	yuHDer	يَحْضِرُ	هُوَ
She brings			هِيَ
They bring			هُمْ

Exercise 1: Complete the conjugation of the below verbs in the present tense:

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I receive	'astalem	أَسْتَلِمُ	أَنَا
We receive			نَحْنُ
You receive (male)			أَنْتَ
You receive (female)			أَنْتِ
You receive (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He receives	yastalem	يَسْتَلِمُ	هُوَ
She receives			هِيَ
They receive			هُمْ

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I open	'aftaH	أَفْتَحُ	أَنَا
We open			نَحْنُ
You open (male)			أَنْتَ
You open (female)			أَنْتِ
You open (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He opens	yaftaH	يَفْتَحُ	هُوَ
She opens			هِيَ
They open			هُمْ

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I spend (money)	'aSref	أَصْرَفَ	أَنَا
We spend			نَحْنُ
You spend (male)			أَنْتَ
You spend (female)			أَنْتِ
You spend (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He spends	yaSref	يَصْرَفُ	هُوَ
She spends			هِيَ
They spend			هُمْ

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I pay (money)	'adfaA	أَدْفَعُ	أَنَا
We pay			نَحْنُ
You pay (male)			أَنْتَ
You pay (female)			أَنْتِ
You pay (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He pays	yadfaA	يَدْفَعُ	هُوَ
She pays			هِيَ
They pay			هُمْ

English	Transliteration	Arabic	Pro
I withdraw (money)	'asHab	أَسْحَبُ	أَنَا
We withdraw			نَحْنُ
You withdraw (male)			أَنْتَ
You withdraw (female)			أَنْتِ
You withdraw (plural)			أَنْتُمْ
He withdraws	yasHab	يَسْحَبُ	هُوَ
She withdraws			هِيَ
They withdraw			هُمْ



Exercise 2: Translate into Arabic:

1- Hello, I'd like to open a bank account please.

B

A

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَحْيَى	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْر	<i>'anaa</i>	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْر	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

2- Do you have a credit card?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

3- Do you have any interest on the saving account?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أَنَا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

4- Do you have any interest on the current account?

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

5- I want to open an account without any interest please.

BA

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	'anaa	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْف؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

6- Do you have car loans?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

7- When can I receive my credit card please?

B**A**

<i>bekhayr</i>	يَخَيْرُ	<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ
<i>an-nuur</i>	النُّور	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-khayr</i>	الْخَيْرِ	<i>'anaa</i>	أنا
<i>Aalaykum</i>	عَلَيْكُمْ	<i>al-Hamdu</i>	الْحَمْدُ
<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَالِ	<i>Kayf?</i>	كَيْفَ؟
<i>Aala khayr</i>	عَلَى خَيْرِ	<i>as-salaamu</i>	السَّلَامُ
<i>as-salaama</i>	السَّلَامَةَ	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَةَ
<i>saAiida</i>	سَعِيدَةَ	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
<i>lillah</i>	لِلَّهِ	<i>tusbeH</i>	تُصَبِّحُ

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

Culture Notes

Who are Arabs?

- Linguistically, the word "Arab" means deserts and waste barren land well- nigh waterless and treeless. Ever since the dawn of history, the Arabian Peninsula and its people have been called as such.
- Over 350 million Arabs world wide
- To be an Arab, is not to come from a particular race. It's a culture trait rather than racial. Any person who adopts the Arabic language as his mother tongue is typically called an Arab
- Arab world includes Muslims, Christians and Jews
- Arabic is the original language of the Holy Qur'an (The Islamic holy book)

The Arab world stretches from Morocco across Northern Africa to the Gulf and is known as the Middle East and North Africa (MENA). It can also be defined as countries where Arabic is the dominant language.

Arabs are the most recent of all Semitic peoples according to their appearance in history. In fact, it is not possible to speak about Arabs in ancient times, but only about their ancestors. Most of the Middle East is now formed by conventionally called "Arab countries"

Consequently, it is helpful to present a brief historical account of the peoples that originally inhabited the Middle East in ancient times, and which of those peoples generated the Arabs.

In order to make this research more comprehensible, we can divide the Ancient Middle East into three main regions:

- 1) **The "Fertile Crescent"** and neighbouring lands, from the Zagros Mounts in the east to the Ararat in the north and the Mediterranean shores in the west (Mesopotamia, Ararat, Syria-Canaan)
- 2) **Egypt**: The ancient Egyptians were Semitic Assyrians tribes have been involved with the origin of the Ishmaelite Arabs after sometimes. This made a result of a foreign invasion performed in the Middle Ages, when the Arabs made of Egypt the outpost for the conquest of Africa and Mediterranean Sea. Egypt is mentioned **four times** in the holy Qur'an.
- 3) **The Arabian Peninsula**: the query consists in establishing how much Semitic these peoples were and up to what amount the Ishmaelite have contributed to the formation of the Arab identity.

The Arabian Peninsula is enclosed in the west by the Red Sea and Sinai, in the east by the Arabian Gulf, in the south by the Arabian Sea, which is an extension of the Indian Ocean, and in the north by old Syria and part of Iraq. The area is estimated between a million and a million and a quarter square

miles.

Thanks to its geographical position, the peninsula has always maintained great importance.. Considering its internal setting, it is mostly deserts and sandy places, which has rendered it inaccessible to foreigners and invaders, and allowed its people complete liberty and independence through the ages, despite the presence of two neighbouring great empires.

Its external setting, on the other hand, caused it to be the centre of the old world and provided it with sea and land links with most nations at the time. Thanks to this strategic position the Arabian Peninsula had become the centre for trade, culture, religion and art.

Today, Arab countries are religiously and ethnically diverse with Islam being the dominant religion in most countries.

Importance of the Arab world

- 22 countries make up together the Arab league, which located in the middle of the world
- Location of the beginning of the three main world religions (Islam, Christianity and Judaism)
- Close to 70% of earth's oil reserves which at the Arabian Peninsula and north Africa
- Saudi Arabia and Iraq possess the world's largest reserves of oil

Common Misconceptions

- All Arabs are Muslims, and all Muslims are Arab.

Arabs are a religiously diverse group – significant numbers of Arab Christians are in Egypt, Lebanon, Syria, Palestine, Jordan, and Iraq. Arabs make up between 18-20% only of the Muslims populations in the world.

- Muslim women are oppressed and forced to wear the hijab.
Women often see it as empowering because they are not viewed as sexual objects but judged by their character.

Muslim advocacy groups point out that four out of the five countries with the largest Muslim populations although they are not Arab countries— Bangladesh, Indonesia, Pakistan, and Turkey — have had female heads of state, something the United States cannot claim

- The Arab world is one big desert.

Truly geographically complex and diverse, but can you spot a Camel or a tent in these photos?!



Arab Contribution to History

For generations, the lore of "One Thousand and One Nights" helped shape Western notions about Arab culture. The collection of tales described an exotic world of harems and flying carpets, Sinbad and monsters, Aladdin and the jinn, Ali Baba and the 40 thieves. But there are few other things were more important than Arabian Nights tales.

The discoveries made by men and women in Muslim civilization have left their mark on the way we live today. An organization called 1001 Inventions has uncovered a thousand years of science and technology that had a huge but hidden impact on the modern world.

Follow the link below to watch 10 minutes movie on YouTube

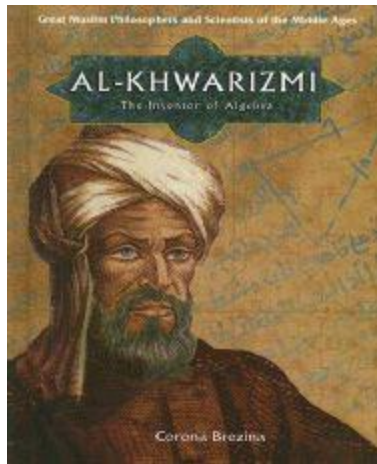
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JZDe9DCx7Wk&feature=player_embedded#!

<http://www.1001inventions.com/>

Did you know that Camera, Algebra, and Alchemy are originally Arabic words?!!

The camera is not a modern invention! It was invented around a thousand years ago by Muslim Arab scientist. His name is Abu Ali al-Hasan Ibn al-Haitham.

Ibn alHaitham did a great deal of revolutionary and influential work on optics through the meticulous experimentation and evidence collection, creative explaining and thorough recording. He was most likely the first to prove that light travels in straight lines, and that we see things when light reflects off an object and enters the eye. Ibn al-Haitham's 'Book of Optics had a profound impact on the work of Bacon (13thcentury) and Davinci (15thcentury). (Book Reference: Vision and Cameras,)



Ibn al-Haitham on Iraqi currency

Ibn al-Haitham who is well known by the name (Hazen) in western books was a 10th century scientist who revolutionized optics.

Born in Basra, Iraq, he spent his adult life in Cairo, Egypt. His most influential achievement was his Book of optics, which formed the foundations for the science of optics.

He rejected the Greek theory that an invisible light emitting from the eye caused sight, instead rightly stating that vision was caused by light reflecting off an object and entering the eye. By using a darkroom with a pinhole on one side and a white sheet on the other, he provided the evidence for his theory. He called this the 'Qamra' which means in Arabic the (dark lightning room), and it was the world's first camera. (Reference: 1001 Inventions website)

Algebra was invented by the Muslim mathematician Al-Khwarizmi in the book he wrote in 820. Algebra is the Arabic word (aljabr) for "equation," and the word "algorithm" comes from the author's name, Al-Khwarizmi. He is rightly known as "the father of Algebra."

The word "algebra" is named after the Arabic word "al-jabr" from the title of the book [al-Kitāb al-mukhtaSar fī Hisāb al-ğabr wa-l-muqābala' , (The book of Summary Concerning Calculating by Transposition and Reduction), a book written by the Muslim mathematician, Muhammad ibn Mūsā al-

Khawārizmī in 820.

The word Al-Jabr means "reunion. In fact, many ancient civilizations developed some sort of algebraic methods of solving problems, as far back as the Babylonians, Diophantus of Alexandria and the Indian mathematicians such as Brahmagupta, but Al-Khwarizmi is considered by many to be the "father of algebra" because some of his techniques on solving quadratic equations are still in use today. He was the first to solve equations using general methods. He solved the linear indeterminate equations, quadratic equations, second order indeterminate equations and equations with multiple variables.



Al-khawarizmi on a stamp

It was one of the most significant advances made by Arabic mathematics began at this time with the work of al-Khwarizmi, namely the beginnings of algebra. It is important to understand just how significant this new idea was. It was a revolutionary move away from the Greek concept of mathematics, which was essentially geometry.

Algebra was a unifying theory which allowed rational numbers, irrational numbers geometrical magnitudes, etc., to be all treated as "algebraic objects." It gave mathematics a whole new development path so much broader in concept to that which had existed before, and provided a vehicle for future development of the subject. Another important aspect of the introduction of algebraic ideas was that it allowed mathematics to be applied to itself in a way, which had not happened in the past.

Alchemy

Jaber Bin Hay-yan is one of the world's most great scientists (born in 721- died in 815) was an Arabic scientist who lived in Iraq. He was an Arabic doctor and chemist, and the first to work and become a genius in old chemistry where even arabs called general chemistry as "handiwork of Jaber" and they called him (the father of chemistry) as he was the one who led the foundations for modern and contemporary scientific chemistry.



Some of his discoveries in chemistry:

- Discovered "caustic soda".
- First to evoke water gold.
- First to introduce the method of separation of (NOH)
- First to discover nitric acid.
- First to discover hydrochloric acid.
- First to retrieve the sulphuric acid and termed it Alzaj oil.
- Introduced improvements to the evaporation methods of liquidation, distillation, fusion and crystallization.
- Been able to prepare a lot of chemicals like hydrated mercury.
- He explained in detail how to prepare arsenic, antimony, and purification of metals and dyeing fabrics.
- He manufactured incombustible paper.
- He made some sort of paint that prevents iron rust.
- The first to introduce the method of separating gold from silver solution by acids, which is the predominant mode to this day.

Jaber also wrote so many books between two hundred and thirty-two and five hundred books (232-500), on which the world depended on for several centuries and until today.

Mariam al-Astrulabi

She was a 10th century Syrian astronomer who was a highly skilled astrolabe maker who continued her father's work of making sophisticated astrolabes throughout her life.

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Son	<i>ebn</i>	ابن
Daughter	<i>ebna</i>	ابنة
Nephew	<i>ebn akh</i>	ابن الأخ
Name	<i>esm</i>	اسم
my name	<i>esmy</i>	اسمي
woman	<i>emra'a</i>	امرأة
The (Definite article attached to the words).	<i>al</i>	ال
condition	<i>al-Haal</i>	الحال
Night time	<i>al-layl</i>	الليل
Daytime	<i>an-nahaar</i>	النهار
Light	<i>en-nuur</i>	النور
Today	<i>al-yuum</i>	اليوم
Exam	<i>al-emteHaan</i>	الامتحان
the Emirates	<i>al-'emaaraat</i>	الإمارات
blue	<i>al-'azraq</i>	الأزرق
white	<i>al'abyaD</i>	الأبيض

It was a simple thing you can hold on your hand for calculating or time keeping and knowing directions, which led for the today inventions of the compass and to the satellite navigation which helped people to travel around the world.

Follow the link below to watch 10 minutes movie on YouTube

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JZDe9DCx7Wk&feature=player_embedded#!

Arabic - English glossary

The following glossary contains the words presented in this book. Also most of the meanings given are as used in the book. Plurals are given in brackets after singulars, and verbs are given in Arabic in present and past tenses.

black	<i>al'aswad</i>	الأسود
Dairy	<i>al-'albaan</i>	الألبان
The father	<i>al-'ab</i>	الأب
now	<i>al-'aan</i>	الآن
Al-Basra	<i>al-baSra</i>	البصرة
The door	<i>al-baab</i>	الباب
Shopping	<i>at-tasaw-wuq</i>	التسوق
beauty	<i>at-tajmiil</i>	التجميل
The dates	<i>at-tamr</i>	التمر
the third	<i>ath-thaa leth</i>	الثالث
the weather	<i>al-jaww</i>	الجو
Cheese	<i>al-jubn</i>	الجبنة
The camel	<i>al-jamal</i>	الجمال
Praise	<i>al-Hamd</i>	الحمد
Thanks to <u>God</u>	<i>al-Hamdulillah</i>	الحمد لله
the bus	<i>alHaafela</i>	الحافلة
The park	<i>alHadiiq</i>	الحديقة
The bread	<i>al-khubz</i>	الخبز
The flour	<i>ad-daqqiq</i>	الدقيق
The gold	<i>aTh-Thahab</i>	الذهب
The man	<i>ar-rajul</i>	الرجل
The rose	<i>az-zahra</i>	الزهرة
Peace	<i>as-salaam</i>	السلام
Peace be upon you	<i>as-salaam Aalaikum</i>	السلام عليكم
sweater	<i>as-sutra</i>	السُّترة

Supermarket	<i>as-suuper market</i>	السُّوْبَر مَارْكِيْت
The fish	<i>as-samak</i>	السَّمَك
work	<i>ash-shughl</i>	الشُّغْل
The sun	<i>ash-shams</i>	الشَّمْس
Health	<i>aS-she-Ha</i>	الصِّحَّة
The picture	<i>aS-Suura</i>	الصُّورَة
The guest	<i>aD-Dayf</i>	الضَّيْف
The student	<i>aT-Taaleb</i>	الطَّالِب
The dark	<i>aTH-Thalaam</i>	الظُّلَام
the honey	<i>al-Aasal</i>	العَسَل
The eye	<i>alAin</i>	العَيْن
launch	<i>al-ghadaa'</i>	العَدَاء
the bill	<i>al-faatuura</i>	الفَاتُورَة
The mouth	<i>al-fam</i>	الفَم
Cairo	<i>al-qaahera</i>	القَاهِرَة
menu	<i>al-qa'a'ema</i>	القَائِمَة
train	<i>al-qeTaar</i>	القَطَار
The moon	<i>al-qamar</i>	القَمَر
The book	<i>al-ketaab</i>	الكَتَاب
Allah (name of the God)	<i>Allah</i>	الله
God bless you	<i>Allah yubaarek fiik</i>	الله يُبَارِك فِيكَ
the city	<i>al-madiina</i>	المَدِينَة
night	<i>al-masaa'</i>	المَسَاء
size	<i>al-maqaas</i>	المَقَاس
The teacher	<i>al-mudar-res</i>	المُدْرَس
waiter	<i>an-naadel</i>	النَّادِل
success	<i>an-najaaH</i>	النَّجَاح
The air	<i>al-hawaa'</i>	الهَوَاء
The time	<i>al-waqt</i>	الوَقْت
The hand	<i>al-yad</i>	اليَد
permission	<i>eThn</i>	إِذْن
traffic lights	<i>eshaaraat elmuruur</i>	إِشَارَات المَرور
emirati	<i>emaaraatyy</i>	إِمَارَاتِي
english	<i>engliizyy</i>	إِنْكَلِيزِي
I find	<i>ajed</i>	أَجِد
red	<i>aHmar</i>	أَحْمَر
green	<i>akhDar</i>	أَخْضَر
supplies	<i>adaawaat</i>	أَدْوَات

I pay	<i>adfaA</i>	أَدْفَعُ
I drink	<i>ashrab</i>	أَشْرَبُ
yellow	<i>aSfar</i>	أَصْفَرُ
sure	<i>akiid</i>	أَكِيدُ
american	<i>amriiky</i>	أَمْرِيكِي
I / I'm	<i>anaa</i>	أَنَا
You (for male)	<i>anta</i>	أَنْتَ
You (for female)	<i>anti</i>	أَنْتِ
I look	<i>anThur</i>	أَنْظُرُ
welcome	<i>ahlan wa sahlam</i>	أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا
first	<i>aw-walan</i>	أَوَّلًا
also	<i>ayDan</i>	أَيْضًا
where?	<i>ayn</i>	أَيْنَ؟
Sister	<i>ukht</i>	أُخْتٌ
rice	<i>urz</i>	أُرْزٌ
I want	<i>uriid</i>	أُرِيدُ
Mother	<i>umm</i>	أُمُّ
Father	<i>ab</i>	أَبٌ
Abu Dhabi	<i>abuu Thaby</i>	أَبُو ظَبْيٍ
Brother	<i>akh</i>	أَخٌ
family	<i>usra</i>	أُسْرَةٌ
colors	<i>alwoaan</i>	أَلْوَانٌ
German	<i>almaanyy</i>	أَلْمَانِيّ
Germany	<i>almaanya</i>	أَلْمَانِيَا
America	<i>amriika</i>	أَمْرِيكَا
You (plural)	<i>antum</i>	أَنْتُمْ
Days	<i>ay-yaam</i>	أَيَّامٌ
anything	<i>'shaye ay-y</i>	أَيُّ شَيْءٍ
Else	<i>akhar</i>	آخَرَ
I eat	<i>aakul</i>	أَكُلُ
miss	<i>aanesa</i>	أَنْسَا
suit	<i>badla</i>	بَدَلَةٌ
after	<i>baAd</i>	بَعْدَ
far	<i>baAiid/a</i>	بَعِيدٌ / بَعِيدَةٌ
pants	<i>banTaluun</i>	بَنْطَلُونٌ
Home	<i>bayt</i>	بَيْتٌ
orange	<i>burtuqaal</i>	بُرْتُقَالٌ
Orange	<i>burtuqaalyy</i>	بُرْتُقَالِيّ
Brown	<i>bun-nyy</i>	بُنِّيّ

Good	<i>bekhayr</i>	يَجْبِر
without	<i>beduun</i>	يَدُون
girl	<i>bent</i>	بِنْت
cold	<i>baared</i>	بَارِد
certainly	<i>bet-ta'akiid</i>	بِالتَّأَكِيد
seller	<i>baa'eA</i>	بَائِع
blouse	<i>buluuza</i>	بَلُوزَة
translation	<i>tarjama</i>	تَرْجُومَة
Honored to meet you	<i>tashar-rafna</i>	تَشْرَفْنَا
Please	<i>tafaD-Dal</i>	تَقْضَلْ
Wake up in good condition	<i>tusbeH Aalaa khayr</i>	تُصْبِحْ عَلَي خَيْر
telephone	<i>telefuun</i>	تَلِفُون
ice	<i>thalj</i>	تَلْج
University	<i>jaameAa</i>	جَامِعَة
Grandfather	<i>jadd</i>	جَدّ
Grandmother	<i>jad-da</i>	جَدَّة
new	<i>jadiid/a</i>	جَدِيد / جَدِيدَة
beautiful	<i>jamiil/a</i>	جَمِيل / جَمِيلَة
hungry	<i>javAaan</i>	جَوَّعَان
socks	<i>javaaareb</i>	جَوَارِب
good	<i>jay-yed/a</i>	جَيِّد / جَيِّدَة
hot	<i>Haar</i>	حَارّ
shoe	<i>HeThaa'</i>	حِذَاء
story	<i>Hekaaya</i>	حِكَايَة
Computer	<i>Haasuub</i>	حَاسُوب
milk	<i>Haliib</i>	حَلِيب
University	<i>jaameAa</i>	جَامِعَة
Grandfather	<i>jadd</i>	جَدّ
Grandmother	<i>jad-da</i>	جَدَّة
new	<i>jadiid/a</i>	جَدِيد / جَدِيدَة
beautiful	<i>jamiil/a</i>	جَمِيل / جَمِيلَة
hungry	<i>javAaan</i>	جَوَّعَان
socks	<i>javaaareb</i>	جَوَارِب
good	<i>jay-yed/a</i>	جَيِّد / جَيِّدَة
hot	<i>Haar</i>	حَارّ
shoe	<i>HeThaa'</i>	حِذَاء
story	<i>Hekaaya</i>	حِكَايَة
Computer	<i>Haasuub</i>	حَاسُوب
milk	<i>Haliib</i>	حَلِيب

sale	<i>KhaSm</i>	خَصْم
uncle / aunt	<i>khaal/a</i>	خال/ة
chicken	<i>dajaaj</i>	دَجَاج
Dubai	<i>dubai</i>	دُبَي
Dirhm	<i>derham</i>	درهم
Dollar	<i>duulaar</i>	دولار
Golden	<i>Thahabyy</i>	ذَهَبِي
message	<i>resaala</i>	رِسَالَة
tie	<i>rabTat Aunuq</i>	رِبْطَة عُنُق
sad	<i>zaAlaan</i>	زَعْلَان
Pink	<i>zahryy</i>	زَهْرِي
bottle	<i>zujaaja</i>	زَجَاجَة
happy	<i>saAiid/a</i>	سَعِيد / سَعِيدَة
salad	<i>salaTa</i>	سَلَاطَة
your safety	<i>salaamatk</i>	سَلَامَتِك
bad	<i>say-ye'/a</i>	سَيِّء / سَيِّئَة
car	<i>say-yaara</i>	سَيَّارَة
sugar	<i>suk-kar</i>	سُكَّر
Syria	<i>suurya</i>	سُورِيَا
market/ super market	<i>suuq</i>	سُوق
hot	<i>saakhen</i>	سَاخِن
watch	<i>saaAa</i>	سَاعَة
thank you	<i>shukran</i>	شُكْرًا
Morning	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
friend	<i>Sadiiq</i>	صَدِيق
small / young	<i>Saghiir/a</i>	صَغِير / صَغِيرَة
page	<i>SafHa</i>	صَفْحَة
picture	<i>Suura</i>	صُورَة
tight	<i>Day-yeq</i>	صَبَق
table	<i>Taawela</i>	طَاوَلَة
of course	<i>TabAan</i>	طَبَعًا
Scarf	<i>TarHa</i>	طَرَحَة
tall	<i>Tawiil/a</i>	طَوِيل / طَوِيلَة
child	<i>Tefl</i>	طِفْل
student	<i>Taaleb</i>	طَالِب
kind	<i>Tay-yeb/a</i>	طَيِّب / طَيِّبَة
juice	<i>AaSiiir</i>	عَصِير
Excuse me	<i>Aafwan</i>	عَفْوًا

Iraqi	<i>Aeraaqyy</i>	عراقي/ة
at	<i>Aenda</i>	عند
habbit	<i>Aaada</i>	عادة
flag	<i>Aalam</i>	علم
the dressing room	<i>ghurfat l-qeyaaas</i>	غرفة القياس
Room	<i>ghurfa</i>	غرفة
France	<i>faransaa</i>	فرنسا
french	<i>faransyy</i>	فرنسي
Class	<i>faSl</i>	فصل
Nice to meet you	<i>furSa saAiida</i>	فرصة سعيدة
dress	<i>fustaan</i>	فستان
Silver (color)	<i>feD-Dyy</i>	فضي
really	<i>feAlan</i>	فجلاً
in	<i>fii</i>	في
old	<i>qadiim/a</i>	قديم / قديمة
near	<i>qariib/a</i>	قريب / قريبة
short	<i>qaSiir/a</i>	قصير / قصيرة
Quatar	<i>qaTar</i>	قطر
Qatari	<i>qaTaryy</i>	قطري/ة
Pen	<i>qalam</i>	قلم
little	<i>qaliilan</i>	قليلاً
Shirt	<i>qamiiS</i>	قميص
department / section	<i>qesm</i>	قسم
coffee	<i>qahtwa</i>	قهوة
big	<i>kabiir</i>	كبير
canada	<i>kanada</i>	كندا
how	<i>kayf</i>	كيف
Chair	<i>kursyy</i>	كرسي
everything	<i>kul shaye'</i>	كل شيء
college/ faculty	<i>kul-ley-ya</i>	كلية
Kuwaiti	<i>kuzwiityy</i>	كويتي
enough	<i>kaaf</i>	كافي
meat	<i>laHm</i>	لحم
Nice	<i>laTiiffa</i>	لطيف / لطيفة
but	<i>laaken</i>	لكن
Good night	<i>layla saAiida</i>	ليلة سعيدة
One night	<i>layla</i>	ليلة
lebanon	<i>lubnaan</i>	لبنان
for	<i>le</i>	لـ
why?	<i>lema / lemaThaa</i>	لم / لماذا؟

no	<i>laa</i>	لا
actor	<i>mumath-thel</i>	مُمَثِّل
congratulation	<i>mabruuk</i>	مَبْرُوك
when?	<i>mataa</i>	مَتَى؟
School	<i>madrasa</i>	مَدْرَسَة
welcome	<i>marHaba</i>	مَرْحَبًا
Woman	<i>mar'a</i>	مَرَأَة
Evening	<i>masaa'</i>	مَسَاء
busy	<i>mashghuul</i>	مَشْغُول
famous	<i>mash-huur</i>	مَشْهُور
restaurant	<i>maTAam</i>	مَطْعَم
with	<i>maAa</i>	مَعَ
good bye	<i>maAas-salaama</i>	مَعَ السَّلَامَة.
with whom?	<i>maAa man?</i>	مَعَ مَنْ؟
office/ desk	<i>maktab</i>	مَكْتَب
corridor / aisle	<i>mamarr</i>	مَمْر
who?	<i>man</i>	مَنْ؟
clever	<i>mujtahed</i>	مُجْتَهِد
lecture	<i>muHaaDara</i>	مُحَاوَرَة
accountant	<i>muHaaseb</i>	مُحَاسِب
different	<i>mukhtalefa</i>	مُخْتَلِفَة
director/manager	<i>mudiir</i>	مُدِير
exhausted	<i>murhaq</i>	مُرْهَق
muslim	<i>muslem</i>	مُسْلِم
possible	<i>mumken</i>	مُمْكِن
engeneer	<i>muhandes</i>	مُهَنْدِس
Clerk	<i>muwaTH-THaf</i>	مَوْظَف
Egypt	<i>meSr</i>	مِصْر
Egyptian	<i>meSryy</i>	مِصْرِي
Seat	<i>meqAad</i>	مَقْعَد
salt	<i>melH</i>	مِلْح
From	<i>men</i>	مِنْ
from where?	<i>men 'ayn?</i>	مِنْ أَيْنَ؟
Please	<i>men faDlek</i>	مِنْ فَضْلِكَ
what? (used before nouns)	<i>maa?</i>	مَا؟
water	<i>meyaah /maa</i>	مَاء / مِيَاه
what? (used before verbs)	<i>maaThaa</i>	مَاذَا؟
station	<i>maHaT-Ta</i>	مِحْطَة
We	<i>naHnu</i>	نَحْنُ
a look	<i>naTHra</i>	نَظْرَة

yes	<i>naAam</i>	نَعَمْ
same	<i>nafs</i>	نَفْس
number	<i>nemra</i>	يَمْرَة
telephone	<i>haatef</i>	هَاتِف
this(f)	<i>haaThehe</i>	هَذِهِ
this (m)	<i>haaThaa</i>	هَذَا
a word for yes / no question	<i>hal</i>	هَلْ
They (plural)	<i>hum</i>	هُمْ
He / It (for masculine)	<i>hutoa</i>	هُوَ
She /It (for feminine)	<i>heya</i>	هِيَ
and	<i>wa</i>	وَ
paper	<i>waraqa</i>	وَرَقَة
wide	<i>waaseA/a</i>	وَاسِعٌ / وَاسِيعَةٌ
take	<i>ya'khuTh</i>	يَأْخُذُ
eat	<i>ya'kul</i>	يَأْكُلُ
it seems	<i>yabduu</i>	يَبْدُو
to Sit	<i>yajles</i>	يَجْلِسُ
to Exit-go out	<i>yakhruj</i>	يَخْرُجُ
to study	<i>yadrus</i>	يَدْرُسُ
to live	<i>yaskun</i>	يَسْكُنُ
to drink	<i>yashrab</i>	يَشْرَبُ
to order	<i>yaTlub</i>	يَطْلُبُ
to Know	<i>yaAref</i>	يَعْرِفُ
to Work	<i>yaAmal</i>	يَعْمَلُ
to understand	<i>yafham</i>	يَفْهَمُ
to sleep	<i>yanaam</i>	يَنَامُ
Day	<i>yawm</i>	يَوْمٌ
to try	<i>yujar-reb</i>	يَجْرِبُ
to like	<i>yuHeb</i>	يُحِبُّ
want	<i>yuriid</i>	يُرِيدُ
to through	<i>yulqii</i>	يُلْقِي
possible to	<i>yumken 'an</i>	يُمْكِنُ أَنْ
vocative particile	<i>yaa</i>	يَا
to speak	<i>yatakal-lam</i>	يَتَكَلَّمُ
to travel	<i>yusaafar</i>	يَسَافِرُ

English	Transliteration	Arabic
a look	<i>naTHra</i>	نَظْرَة
a word for yes / no question	<i>hal</i>	هَلْ
Abu Dhabi	<i>abuu Thaby</i>	أَبُو ظَبْي
accountant	<i>muHaaseb</i>	مُحَاسِب
actor	<i>mumath-thel</i>	مُمَثِّل
after	<i>baAd</i>	بَعْد
Al-Basra	<i>al-baSra</i>	الْبَصْرَة
Allah (name of the God)	<i>Allah</i>	الله
also	<i>ayDan</i>	أَيْضًا
America	<i>amriika</i>	أَمْرِيكَا
american	<i>amriikyy</i>	أَمْرِيكِي
and	<i>wa</i>	وَ
anything	<i>'shaye ay-y</i>	أَي شَيْءٍ
at	<i>Aenda</i>	عِنْدَ
bad	<i>say-ye'la</i>	سَيِّئًا / سَيِّئَةً

English - Arabic glossary

The following glossary contains the words presented in this book. Also most of the meanings given are as used in the book. Plurals are given in brackets after singulars, and verbs are given in Arabic in present and past tenses.

beautiful	<i>jamiil/a</i>	جَمِيل / جَمِيلَة
beauty	<i>at-tajmiil</i>	التَّجْمِيل
big	<i>kabiir</i>	كَبِير
black	<i>al'aswad</i>	الْأَسْوَد
blouse	<i>buluza</i>	بلوزة
blue	<i>al-'azraq</i>	الْأَزْرَق
bottle	<i>zujaaja</i>	زُجَاجَة
Brother	<i>akh</i>	أَخ
Brown	<i>bun-nyy</i>	بُنِّي
busy	<i>mashghuul</i>	مَشْغُول
but	<i>laaken</i>	لَكِن
Cairo	<i>al-qaahera</i>	الْقَاهِرَة
canada	<i>kanada</i>	كَنْدَا
car	<i>say-yaara</i>	سَيَّارَة
certainly	<i>bet-ta'akiid</i>	بِالتَّأَكِيد
Chair	<i>kursyy</i>	كُرْسِي
Cheese	<i>al-jubn</i>	الْجُبْن
chicken	<i>dajaaj</i>	دَجَاج
child	<i>Tefl</i>	طِفْل
Class	<i>faSl</i>	فَصْل
Clerk	<i>muwaTH-THaf</i>	مُوَطَّف
clever	<i>mujtahed</i>	مُجْتَهِد
coffee	<i>qahwa</i>	قَهْوَة
cold	<i>baared</i>	بَارِد
college/ faculty	<i>kul-ley-ya</i>	كُلِيَة
colors	<i>alwaan</i>	الْوَان

Computer	<i>Haasuub</i>	حاسوب
condition	<i>al-Haal</i>	الْحَال
congratulation	<i>mabruuk</i>	مَبْرُوك
corridor / aisle	<i>mamarr</i>	مَمَر
Dairy	<i>al-'albaar</i>	الْألبان
Daughter	<i>ebna</i>	بِنْت
Day	<i>yawm</i>	يَوْم
Days	<i>ay-yaam</i>	أَيَّام
Daytime	<i>an-nahaar</i>	النَّهَار
department / section	<i>qesm</i>	قِسْم
different	<i>mukhtalefa</i>	مُخْتَلِفَة
director/manager	<i>mudiir</i>	مُدِير
Dirhm	<i>derham</i>	درهم
Dollar	<i>duulaar</i>	دولار
dress	<i>fustaan</i>	فُسْتَان
Dubai	<i>dubai</i>	دُبَي
eat	<i>ya'kul</i>	يَأْكُل
Egypt	<i>meSr</i>	مِصْر
Egyptian	<i>meSryy</i>	مِصْرِي
Else	<i>akhar</i>	أَخْر
emirati	<i>emaaraatyy</i>	إِمَارَاتِي
engineer	<i>muhandes</i>	مُهَنْدِس
english	<i>engliizyy</i>	إِنْكَلِيزِي
enough	<i>kaaf</i>	كَاف
Evening	<i>masaa'</i>	مَسَاء
everything	<i>kul shaye'</i>	كُلُّ شَيْءٍ
Exam	<i>al-emteHaan</i>	الامْتِحَان
Excuse me	<i>Aafwan</i>	عَفْوًا
exhausted	<i>murhaq</i>	مُرْهَق
family	<i>usra</i>	أُسْرَة
famous	<i>mash-huur</i>	مَشْهُور
far	<i>baAiid/a</i>	بَعِيد / بَعِيدَة
Father	<i>ab</i>	أَب
first	<i>aw-walan</i>	أَوَّلًا
flag	<i>Aalam</i>	عَلَم
for	<i>le</i>	لِ
France	<i>faransaa</i>	فَرَنْسَا
french	<i>faransyy</i>	فَرَنْسِي

friend	<i>Sadiiq</i>	صَدِيقٌ
From	<i>men</i>	مِنْ
from where?	<i>men 'ayn?</i>	مِنْ أَيْنَ؟
German	<i>almaanyy</i>	أَلْمَانِيّ
Germany	<i>almaanya</i>	أَلْمَانِيَا
girl	<i>bent</i>	بِنْتٌ
God bless you	<i>Allah yubaarek fiik</i>	اللّٰهُ يُبَارِكُ فِيكَ
Golden	<i>Thahabyy</i>	ذَهَبِيّ
Good	<i>bekhayr</i>	يَحْسَبُ
good	<i>jay-yed/a</i>	جَيِّدٌ / جَيِّدَةٌ
good bye	<i>maAas-salaama</i>	مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ.
Good night	<i>layla saAiida</i>	لَيْلَةٌ سَعِيدَةٌ
Grandfather	<i>jadd</i>	جَدٌّ
Grandmother	<i>jad-da</i>	جَدَّةٌ
green	<i>akhDar</i>	أَخْضَرٌ
habbit	<i>Aaada</i>	عَادَةٌ
happy	<i>saAiid/a</i>	سَعِيدٌ / سَعِيدَةٌ
He / It (for masculine)	<i>hurwa</i>	هُوَ
Health	<i>aS-she-Ha</i>	الصِّحَّةُ
Home	<i>bayt</i>	بَيْتٌ
Honored to meet you	<i>tashar-rafna</i>	تَشَرَّفْنَا
hot	<i>Haar</i>	حَارٌّ
hot	<i>saakhen</i>	سَاكِنٌ
how	<i>kayf</i>	كَيْفٌ
hungry	<i>jawAaan</i>	جَوْعَانٌ
I / I'm	<i>anaa</i>	أَنَا
I drink	<i>ashrab</i>	أَشْرَبُ
I eat	<i>aakul</i>	أَكُلُ
I look	<i>anThur</i>	أَنْظُرُ
I pay	<i>adfaA</i>	أَدْفَعُ
I want	<i>uriid</i>	أُرِيدُ
ice	<i>thalj</i>	تَلْجٌ
in	<i>fi</i>	فِي
Iraqi	<i>Aeraaqyy</i>	عِرَاقِيّ/ة
it seems	<i>yabduu</i>	يَبْدُو
juice	<i>AaSiir</i>	عَصِيرٌ
kind	<i>Tay-yeb/a</i>	طَيِّبٌ / طَيِّبَةٌ
Kuwaiti	<i>kuwiiityy</i>	كُوَيْتِيّ
launch	<i>al-ghadaa'</i>	الغَدَاءُ

lebanon	<i>lubnaan</i>	لُبْنَان
lecture	<i>muHaaDara</i>	مُحَاذِرَة
Light	<i>en-nuur</i>	النُّور
little	<i>qaliilan</i>	قَلِيلًا
market/ super market	<i>suuq</i>	سُوق
meat	<i>laHm</i>	لَحْم
menu	<i>al-qaa'ema</i>	القائمة
message	<i>resaala</i>	رِسَالَة
milk	<i>Haliib</i>	حَلِيب
miss	<i>aanesa</i>	أَنَسَة
Morning	<i>SabaaH</i>	صَبَاح
Mother	<i>umm</i>	أُمُّ
muslim	<i>muslem</i>	مُسْلِم
my name	<i>esmy</i>	إِسْمِي
Name	<i>esm</i>	إِسْم
near	<i>qariib/a</i>	قَرِيب / قَرِيبَة
Nephew	<i>ebn akh</i>	إِبْن الأَخ
new	<i>jadiid/a</i>	جَدِيد / جَدِيدَة
Nice	<i>laTiif/a</i>	لَطِيف / لَطِيفَة
Nice to meet you	<i>furSa saAiida</i>	فُرْسَة سَعِيدَة
night	<i>al-masaa'</i>	المَسَاء
Night time	<i>al-layl</i>	اللَّيْل
no	<i>laa</i>	لا
now	<i>al-'aan</i>	الآن
number	<i>nemra</i>	يَمْرَة
of course	<i>TabAan</i>	طَبَعًا
office/ desk	<i>maktab</i>	مَكْتَب
old	<i>qadiim/a</i>	قَدِيم / قَدِيمَة
One night	<i>layla</i>	لَيْلَة
orange	<i>burtuqaal</i>	بُرْتُقَال
Orange	<i>burtuqaalyy</i>	بُرْتُقَالِي
page	<i>SafHa</i>	صَفْحَة
pants	<i>banTaluun</i>	بَنْطَلُون
paper	<i>waraqa</i>	وَرَقَة
Peace	<i>as-salaam</i>	السَّلَام
Peace be upon you	<i>as-salaam Aalaikum</i>	السَّلَام عَلَيكُم
Pen	<i>qalam</i>	قَلَم

permission	<i>eThn</i>	إذن
picture	<i>Suura</i>	صُورَة
Pink	<i>zahryy</i>	زَهْرِي
Please	<i>tafaD-Dal</i>	تَفَضَّل
Please possible	<i>men faDlek mumken</i>	مِنْ فَضْلِكَ ممكن
possible to	<i>yumken 'an</i>	يُمْكِنُ أَنْ
Praise	<i>al-Hamd</i>	الْحَمْدُ
Qatari	<i>qaTaryy</i>	قَطْرِي/ة
Qatar really	<i>qaTar</i>	قَطْر
red	<i>feAlan aHmar</i>	فِيحْمَلَا أَحْمَر
restaurant	<i>maTAam</i>	مَطْعَم
rice	<i>urz</i>	أرز
Room	<i>ghurfa</i>	عَرَفَة
sad	<i>zaAlaan</i>	زَعْلَان
salad	<i>salaTa</i>	سَلَاطَة
sale	<i>KhaSm</i>	خَصْم
salt	<i>melH</i>	مِلْح
same	<i>nafs</i>	نَفْس
Scarf	<i>TarHa</i>	طَرَحَة
School	<i>madrasa</i>	مَدْرَسَة
Seat seller	<i>meqAad baa'eA</i>	مَقْعَد بَائِع
She /It (for feminine)	<i>heya</i>	هِيَ
Shirt	<i>qamiiS</i>	قَمِيص
shoe	<i>HeThaa'</i>	جِذَاء
Shopping	<i>at-tasaw-wuuq</i>	التَسَوُّق
short	<i>qaSiir/a</i>	قَصِير / قَصِيرَة
Silver (color)	<i>feD-Dyy</i>	فِضِّي
Sister size	<i>ukht al-maqaas</i>	أَخْت المَقَاسُ
small / young	<i>Saghiiir/a</i>	صَغِير / صَغِيرَة
socks	<i>jawaareb</i>	جَوَارِب
Son	<i>ebn</i>	ابْن
station	<i>maHaT-Ta</i>	مَحَطَة
story	<i>Hekaaya</i>	حِكَايَة
student	<i>Taaleb</i>	طَالِب
success	<i>an-najaaH</i>	النَّجَاح

sugar	<i>suk-kar</i>	سُكَّر
suit	<i>badla</i>	بَدْلَة
Supermarket supplies	<i>as-suuper market adawaat</i>	السُّوْبَر مَارْكُتْ أَدَوَاتْ
sure	<i>akiid</i>	أَكِيدْ
sweater	<i>as-sutra</i>	السُّتْرَة
Syria	<i>suurya</i>	سُورِيَا
table	<i>Taatvela</i>	طَاوَلَة
take	<i>ya'khuTh</i>	يَأْخُذْ
tall	<i>Tawiil/a</i>	طَوِيل / طَوِيلَة
telephone	<i>telefuun</i>	تَلِفُون
telephone	<i>haatef</i>	هَاتِف
thank you	<i>shukran</i>	شُكْرًا
Thanks to <u>God</u>	<i>al-Hamdulillah</i>	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ
The (Definite article attached to the words).	<i>al</i>	الْ
The air	<i>al-hawaa'</i>	الهَوَاءْ
the bill	<i>al-faatuura</i>	الْفَاتُورَة
The book	<i>al-ketaab</i>	الْكِتَاب
The bread	<i>al-khubz</i>	الْخُبْز
the bus	<i>alHaafela</i>	الْحَافِلَة
The camel	<i>al-jamal</i>	الْجَمَل
the city	<i>al-madiina</i>	الْمَدِينَة
The dark	<i>aTH-Thalaam</i>	الظَّلَام
The dates	<i>at-tamr</i>	التَّمْر
The door	<i>al-baab</i>	الْبَاب
the dressing room	<i>ghurfat l-qeyaas</i>	عُرْفَة القِيَاس
the Emirates	<i>al-'emaaraat</i>	الإِمَارَات
The eye	<i>alAin</i>	الْعَيْن
The father	<i>al-'ab</i>	الْأَب
The fish	<i>as-samak</i>	السَّمَك
The flour	<i>ad-daqqiq</i>	الدَّقِيق
The gold	<i>aTh-Thahab</i>	الذَّهَب
The guest	<i>aD-Dayf</i>	الضَّيْف
The hand	<i>al-yad</i>	الْيَد
the honey	<i>al-Aasal</i>	العَسَل
The man	<i>ar-rajul</i>	الرَّجُل
The moon	<i>al-qamar</i>	القَمَر
The mouth	<i>al-fam</i>	الفَم

The park	<i>alHadiqa</i>	الحديقة
The picture	<i>aS-Suura</i>	الصورة
The rose	<i>az-zahra</i>	الزهرة
The student	<i>aT-Taaleb</i>	الطالب
The sun	<i>ash-shams</i>	الشمس
The teacher	<i>al-mudar-res</i>	المدرس
the third	<i>ath-thaa leth</i>	الثالث
The time	<i>al-waqt</i>	الوقت
the weather	<i>al-jaww</i>	الجو
They (plural)	<i>hum</i>	هم
this (m)	<i>haaThaa</i>	هذا
this(f)	<i>haaThehe</i>	هذه
tie	<i>rabTat Aunuq</i>	ربطة عنق
tight	<i>Day-yeq</i>	ضيق
to drink	<i>yashrab</i>	يشرب
to Exit-go out	<i>yakhruj</i>	يخرج
to Know	<i>yaAref</i>	يعرف
to like	<i>yuHeb</i>	يحب
to live	<i>yaskun</i>	يسكن
to order	<i>yaTlub</i>	يطلب
to Sit	<i>yajles</i>	يجلس
to sleep	<i>yanaam</i>	يتام
to speak	<i>yatakal-lam</i>	يتكلم
to study	<i>yadrus</i>	يدرس
to through	<i>yulqii</i>	يلقي
to travel	<i>yusaafer</i>	يسافر
to try	<i>yujar-reb</i>	يُجرب
to understand	<i>yafham</i>	يفهم
to Work	<i>yaAmal</i>	يعمل
Today	<i>al-yuum</i>	اليوم
traffic lights	<i>eshaaraat elmuruur</i>	إشارات المرور
train	<i>al-qeTaar</i>	القطار
translation	<i>tarjama</i>	ترجمة
uncle / aunt	<i>khaal/a</i>	خال/ة
University	<i>jaameAa</i>	جامعة
vocative partcile	<i>yaa</i>	يا
waiter	<i>an-naadel</i>	النادل
Wake up in good condition	<i>tusbeH Aalaa khayr</i>	تُصبح على خير

want	yuriid	يُرِيدُ
watch	saaAa	سَاعَةً
water	meyaah /maa	ماء / مياه
We	naHnu	نَحْنُ
welcome	ahlan wa sahlan	أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا
welcome	marHaba	مَرْحَبًا
what? (used before nouns)	maa?	مَا؟
what? (used before verbs)	maaThaa	مَاذَا؟
when?	mataa	مَتَى؟
where?	ayn	أَيْنَ؟
white	al'abyaD	الْأَبْيَضُ
who?	man	مَنْ؟
why?	lema / lemaThaa	لِمَ / لِمَاذَا؟
wide	waaseA/a	واسِعٌ / واسعة
with	maAa	مَعَ
with whom?	maAa man?	مَعَ مَنْ؟
without	beduun	يَدُونُ
woman	emra'a	إِمْرَأَةٌ
Woman	mar'a	مَرَأَةٌ
work	ash-shughl	الْبَيْتُجُلُ
yellow	aSfar	أَصْفَرُ
yes	naAam	نَعَمْ
You (plural)	antum	أَنْتُمْ
You (for female)	anti	أَنْتِ
You (for male)	anta	أَنْتَ
your safety	salaamatk	سَلَامَتِكَ
with	maAa	مَعَ
with whom?	maAa man?	مَعَ مَنْ؟
without	beduun	يَدُونُ
woman	emra'a	إِمْرَأَةٌ
Woman	mar'a	مَرَأَةٌ
work	ash-shughl	الْبَيْتُجُلُ
yellow	aSfar	أَصْفَرُ
yes	naAam	نَعَمْ
You (plural)	antum	أَنْتُمْ
You (for female)	anti	أَنْتِ
You (for male)	anta	أَنْتَ
your safety	salaamatk	سَلَامَتِكَ



Go online and register yourself to download more worksheets

<http://www.LetsTalkArabic.com>

Or follow us on facebook,

<http://www.facebook.com/pages/Lets-Talk-Arabic/143386395727781>

Get your copy of

Part 2

Arabic Script

The Easiest Arabic Reading & Writing Course

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

The author has the pen name of Dr. Adam Yacoub, He is an experienced Arabic linguist, graduated from Al-Azhar University in Cairo, which is considered the third oldest Islamic university in the world (one thousand years-old foundation). He has worked also for several years in teaching Arabic as a foreign language, editor, and proofreader.

Electronic edition produced by
ePubNow!



www.epubnow.com
www.digitalmediainitiatives.com